

PLCnext Technology

User manual UM EN PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY 2019.0 LTS



User manual PLCnext Technology

UM EN PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY 2019.0 LTS, Revision 03

2019-07-31

This user manual is valid for:

Designation	Version
PLCnext Technology firmware	2019.0 LTS
Designation	Order No.
AXC F 2152	2404267
AXC F 2152 STARTERKIT	1046568
RFC 4072S	1051328

Table of contents

1	General information			7
		1.1	Identification of warning notes	7
		1.2	Qualification of users	7
		1.3	Introduction	8
		1.4	Information about this document	9
		1.5	Trademarks/licensing information	9
		1.6	Safety notes	
		1.7	PLCnext Technology product range	11
2	Structure of PLCnext	Tech	ology	12
		2.1	Internal user components	14
		2.2	External user components	
		2.3	System manager	
		2.4	PLC manager	
		2.5	Managing of components	
		2.6	Configuration files	
			2.6.1 acf, esm, gds configuration files	
			2.6.2 .tic file	
			2.6.3 Metafiles	
			2.6.4 Generating configuration files with PLCnext En	-
		0.7	2.6.5 Manual configuration	
		2.7	ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager)	
			2.7.2 Task configuration via configuration files	
		2.8	GDS (Global Data Space)	
		2.0	2.8.1 Port-based communication	
			2.8.2 Fieldbus connection	
			2.8.3 GDS configuration with PLCnext Engineer	
			2.8.4 GDS configuration using configuration files	
			2.8.5 Supported data types	
		2.9	RSC (Remote Service Calls)	42
		2.10	PLCnext embedded OPC UA server (eUA)	42
			2.10.1 OPC UA	
			2.10.2 Configuration	
			2.10.3 OPC UA file access	
			2.10.4 Alarms 2.10.5 Subscriptions	-
			2.10.5 "GlobalDataSpace" namespace	
			2.10.7 Device Integration (DI) namespace	
			5	

	2.10.8	Data types	
	2.10.9	UA server endpoints	
		Encryption algorithms	
		Ethernet ports at the controller Disabling user authentication	
0.44		•	
2.11	Alarms 2.11.1	IEC 61131 alarm function blocks	
	2.11.1	Alarms in C++ programs	
	2.11.3	OPC UA server	
2.12	Notificati	on manager	
	2.12.1	Notifications of the PLCnext Technology firmware	
2.13	Notificati	on logger	
2.10	2.13.1	Displaying notifications in the PLCnext Engineer cockpit	
	2.13.2	Receiving notifications	
	2.13.3	Configuring the notification logger	
	2.13.4	Saving notifications	61
	2.13.5	Querying notifications	
	2.13.6	Permissions	63
2.14	Operatin	g system	63
	2.14.1	Directories of the firmware components in the file system	
	2.14.2	System time	
	2.14.3	OpenVPN™ client	
	2.14.4	IPsec (strongSwan)	
	2.14.5 2.14.6	Text editors User rights	
	2.14.0	Root rights	
	2.14.8	Linux scripts of the PLCnext Technology firmware	
Web-based management (WBM)		73
3.1	Establish	ning a connection to WBM	73
3.2	Licensing	g information on open source software	75
3.3	Changin	g the language	75
3.4	Login		75
3.5	Start pag	ge – areas and functions	76
3.6	"Informa	tion" area	77
	3.6.1	"General Data" page	
3.7	"Diagnos	stics" area	78
	3.7.1	"PROFINET" page	78
3.8	"Configu	ration" area	81
	3.8.1	"PROFICLOUD" page	81
3.9	"Security	" area	82
	3.9.1	"User Authentication" page	
	3.9.2	"Certificate Authentication" page	87

3

Table of contents

			3.9.3	"Firewall" page	95
		3.10	"Admini	stration" area	105
			3.10.1	"Firmware Update" page	105
4	Transferring variable	values	to the	PROFICLOUD	108
		4.1	Creating	y variables as OUT ports	108
		4.2	Preparir	ng the controller for PROFICLOUD	109
		4.3	Configu	ring PROFICLOUD	109
		4.4	Displayi	ng an overview of the PROFICLOUD device metrics	112
		4.5	Displayi	ng the metrics graphically in Grafana	113
5	Structure of a C++ pr	ogram			116
		5.1		" and "LibraryBase"	
		5.2		onent" and "ComponentBase"	
		0.2	5.2.1	"IProgramComponent" and "IProgramProvider"	
			5.2.2	"IProgram" and "ProgramBase"	
			5.2.3	"IControllerComponent"	121
		5.3	Several	component types in the same library	121
		5.4	PLM (Pr	ogram Library Manager)	122
			5.4.1	Functions	122
			5.4.2	Configuration	123
		5.5	ACF (Ap	oplication Component Framework)	123
			5.5.1	Libraries	123
			5.5.2	Components	
			5.5.3	Configuration	
		5.6		n classes	
			5.6.1	Threading	
			5.6.2	"Ipc" (inter-process communication)	
			5.6.3 5.6.4	"Chrono" "Io"	
			5.6.5	"Net"	
			5.6.6	"Runtime"	
		5.7		te Loggable"	
		5.8	Usina R	SC services	
			5.8.1	RSC Axioline services	
			5.8.2	RSC PROFINET services	133
			5.8.3	RSC device interface services	135
			5.8.4	RSC GDS services	140
		5.9	Notificat	ions	147
6	Creating programs w	ith C++	⊦		151
		6.1	PLCnCL	I (PLCnext Command Line Interface)	151

			6.1.1 System requirements	151
			6.1.2 Installing PLCnCLI	152
			6.1.3 Installing SDKs	152
			6.1.4 Functions of the PLCnCLI	153
		6.2	Eclipse® add-in	156
			6.2.1 Requirements	156
			6.2.2 Installing/updating/uninstalling the Eclipse® add-in	156
			6.2.3 Creating a new C++ project in Eclipse®	159
			6.2.4 Creating a program	162
			6.2.5 Compiling the project	163
		6.3	Remote debugging	165
7	Creating function blo	ocks ar	nd functions with C#	166
		7.1	Installing the Visual Studio® extension	167
			7.1.1 System requirements	167
			7.1.2 Installation	168
		7.2	Creating a firmware library	169
		7.3	Remote debugging of C# code with Visual Studio®	172
			7.3.1 Disabling user authentication	172
			7.3.2 Opening a port and deactivating TLS (Transport Layer Securi- ty)	
			7.3.3 Debug mode	
		7.4	Supported functions of the PLCnext Technology C# programming system	178
			7.4.1 C# language functions	
			7.4.2 Base class libraries	
			7.4.3 eCLR runtime functions	181
		7.5	Supported data types	182
8	Matlab® Simulink®			183
9	Importing libraries in	to PLC	next Engineer	184
A	Appondix			101
~	лрыллу			
		A 1	Available data types	
		A 2	PLCnext Technology naming conventions	
		A 3	Explanation of terms	195
		A 4	PROFINET diagnostic code in WBM	200

1 General information

Read this user manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

1.1 Identification of warning notes



This symbol indicates hazards that could lead to personal injury.

There are three signal words indicating the severity of a potential injury.

DANGER

Indicates a hazard with a high risk level. If this hazardous situation is not avoided, it will result in death or serious injury.

WARNING

Indicates a hazard with a medium risk level. If this hazardous situation is not avoided, it could result in death or serious injury.

CAUTION

Indicates a hazard with a low risk level. If this hazardous situation is not avoided, it could result in minor or moderate injury.



Here you will find additional information or detailed sources of information.

This symbol together with the **NOTE** signal word warns the reader of actions



that might cause property damage or a malfunction.

1.2 Qualification of users

The use of products described in this user manual is oriented exclusively to qualified application programmers and software engineers. The users must be familiar with the relevant safety concepts of automation technology as well as applicable standards and other regulations.

For programming of applications, familiarity with C/C++, IEC 61131-3 or MATLAB $^{\mbox{\scriptsize R}}$ Simulink $^{\mbox{\scriptsize R}}$ is assumed.

1.3 Introduction

PLCnext Technology

Demands on automation technology are increasing due to digitization in the industrial sector. Flexibility, networking, exchange of information, the "Internet of Things" are gaining ever more importance for modern, flexible and efficient production. Automation systems and their controllers must become more adaptable and must be able to react ever faster to new requirements.

To meet the changing demands of industry, Phoenix Contact developed PLCnext Technology as the basis for a new, open control platform. PLCnext Technology combines all of the communication properties and advantages of the traditional PLC world with the openness and flexibility of smart devices. Both the control platform and the cloud architecture are based on open-source components which are undergoing continuous, manufacturer-neutral development.

Previously, programming of PLC applications was only possible in the IEC 61131-3 programming languages. PLCnext Technology allows developers from various corporate areas, technology disciplines and generations to work in parallel with and yet independently of each other on one automation application. And they can do that in the programming environment to which they are accustomed. Whether with established and proven programming tools such as Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®], Eclipse[®], MATLAB[®] Simulink[®] or PLCnext Engineer. The programming code can be created in the traditional way in accordance with IEC 61131-3, and in C/C++ or Simulink[®] code.

PLCnext Technology connects and combines traditional PLC programming and high-level language programming. Thus, different programming systems can be used on one platform.

PROFICLOUD, a professional cloud solution and part of PLCnext Technology, enables you to not only collect and process data directly on the controller, but to also have it transferred to the cloud. Therefore, data is more easily available and it can be retrieved and used regardless of the location and time. All performance and energy data of your system is available anywhere and at any time. Cloud-based services are also available, e.g., for data analysis, predictive maintenance, etc.

The open PLCnext Technology platform enables you to extend the benefits of conventional PLCs and provides you with a basis for cutting-edge automation capable of meeting all of the demands of the IoT world.

Advantages at a glance

- Accelerated startup in comparison to conventional control platforms because several developers can work on one program in parallel with and yet independently of each other in different programming languages
- Convenient engineering, thanks to the use of established programming tools such as PLCnext Engineer, MATLAB[®] Simulink[®], Eclipse[®], or Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®]
- Reliable operation because determinism, real-time behavior and cycle-consistent data exchange are assured regardless of the programming language
- Cost-efficient and flexible, thanks to the use of freely available software from the open source community
- Future-proof and adaptable, because new functions and future technologies can be integrated quickly and easily

Creating programs with C++

With PLCnext Technology, you can create programs in C++ and import these into PLCnext Engineer. There, you can instantiate the programs and use them in the same way as conventional IEC 61131-3 programs in real time. Consistent data exchange with programs that were created with other high-level languages or IEC 61131-3 is ensured via the ports of the GDS. This way, the programs can run together in the same tasks.

Phoenix Contact provides an add-in for Eclipse, an SDK (Software Development Kit), as well as a LibraryBuilder. These tools support you in the use of your C++ program on a controller with PLCnext Technology. The Eclipse[®] development environment is particularly suitable because it can be used under both Windows[®] and Linux, and is commonly used in C++ programming (see Section "Creating programs with C++" on page 151).

Creating function blocks and functions with C#

Create function blocks and functions in C# with Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®]. You can use an extension from Phoenix Contact to convert them into libraries, import them into PLCnext Engineer, and use them for your programming. The function blocks or functions can be called up in PLCnext Engineer, e.g., in the ST (Structured Text) or LD (Ladder Diagram) code worksheet, and used for your programming.

The IEC 61131 runtime system of the controller (eCLR) is a .Net-based runtime that supports both IEC 61131-3 and C# code. For this reason, the Visual Studio[®] development environment can be used for C# (see Section "Creating function blocks and functions with C#" on page 166).

1.4 Information about this document

This document describes the PLCnext Technology control platform. It describes the system and its components and provides instructions on creating, using and managing PLCnext Technology applications.

Detailed information on PLCnext Technology is available in the PLCnext Community at <u>plc-next-community.net</u>.

1.5 Trademarks/licensing information

Trademarks

All product names used are trademarks of the respective organizations.

- MATLAB[®] and Simulink[®] are registered trademarks of The MathWorks, Inc.
- Eclipse[®] is a trademark of the Eclipse Foundation.
- Microsoft[®] and Visual Studio[®] are trademarks of the Microsoft Corporation.

Licensing information on open source software

PLCnext controllers work with a Linux operating system. All license information can be called using the "Legal Information" link on every page of webbased management (WBM) for controllers:

• Click on the "Legal Information" link on the bottom left of the WBM page.

Licenses for all of the open source software used are shown.

Further information on WBM of the respective controller is available in the corresponding user manual. The user manual can be downloaded from the product page at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

1.6 Safety notes



NOTE: Risk of unauthorized network access

Connecting devices to a network via Ethernet always entails the risk of unauthorized access to the network.

Therefore, please check for the option of disabling active communication channels in your application (for instance SNMP, FTP, BootP, DCP, HTTP, HTTPS, etc.) or setting passwords to prevent third parties from accessing the controller without authorization and modifying the system.

Due to the communication interfaces of the controller, the controller should not be used in safety-critical applications unless additional security appliances are used.

Please take additional protective measures in accordance with the IT security requirements and the standards applicable to your application (e.g., virtual networks (VPN) for remote maintenance access, firewalls, etc.) for protection against unauthorized network access.

On first request, you shall release Phoenix Contact and the companies associated with Phoenix Contact GmbH & Co. KG, Flachsmarktstrasse 8, 32825 Blomberg in accordance with §§15ff.AktG (German Stock Corporation Act), hereinafter collectively referred to as "Phoenix Contact", from all third-party claims made due to improper use.

For the protection of networks for remote maintenance via VPN, Phoenix Contact offers the mGuard product series security appliances; further information on this is available in the latest Phoenix Contact catalog (phoenixcontact.net/products).

Additional measures for protection against unauthorized network access are listed in the AH EN INDUSTRIAL SECURITY application note. The application note can be downloaded at phoenixcontact.net/products.



NOTE: Risk of unauthorized access to devices

Devices with PLCnext Technology do not feature mechanical access protection and are therefore at risk of manipulation. Unauthorized access can occur via the following device interfaces, for example:

- USB ports
- PCI Express interfaces
- Axioline bus
- SC card slot and the SD card contained therein
- Device HMI (touch panel as well as buttons, switches, etc.)
- Ethernet interfaces

To prevent damage due to authorized access, make sure that only authorized access is possible.

- Protect the interfaces by installing the devices in a control cabinet.
- Secure the control cabinet with a lock.
- Make sure that only authorized persons have access to the control cabinet key.
- Run cables in such a way that they are protected against unauthorized access.

1.7 PLCnext Technology product range



Modifications to hardware and firmware of the devices are not permitted.

Incorrect operation or modifications to the devices can endanger your safety or damage the devices. Do not repair the devices yourself. If the devices are defective, please contact Phoenix Contact.

Currently, the following products are available with PLCnext Technology:

Description	Туре	Order No.
PLCnext Control for the direct control of Axioline F I/Os. With two Ethernet interfaces. Complete with connector and bus base module.	AXC F 2152	2404267
PLCnext Control with 4 x 10/100/1000 Ethernet, PROFINET control- ler with integrated PROFIsafe safety controller, PROFINET device, IP20 degree of protection, pluggable parameterization memory	RFC 4072S	1051328
AXC F 2152 starter kit including AXC F 2152 PLCnext Control, volt- age switch, digital input and output module, analog input and output module, potentiometer, switch module, PROFICLOUD license, as well as a power supply unit, patch cable, country-specific adapter plugs, and documentation.	AXC F 2152 STARTERKIT	1046568
Engineering software platform for Phoenix Contact automation con- trollers. PLCnext Engineer is IEC 61131-3-compliant and its func- tions can be extended using add-ins.	PLCNEXT ENGINEER	1046008
Software add-on for the integration and execution of Matlab Simulink models on Remote Field and Axioline controllers	PC WORX TARGET FOR SIM- ULINK	2400041



Ensure that you always use the latest firmware and documentation. The latest firmware versions and documentation can be downloaded at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

Software packages required for programming in C++ with Eclipse[®] or in C# with Visual Studio[®] can be downloaded from the download area for the AXC F 2152 controller.

Sample projects and the associated documentation can be downloaded at https://github.com/plcnext.

2 Structure of PLCnext Technology

Core components

PLCnext Technology is an open firmware platform executed on a Linux operating system with real-time patch. Different firmware components forming the core functions are called core components. These core components are a fixed part of the PLCnext Technology firmware. They cannot be modified. The core components are divided into the following groups:

- Middleware
- I/O components
- Service components
- System components



Linux Operating System



Middleware

I/O components /

fieldbus manager

The middleware section decouples the PLCnext Technology firmware from the operating system. The GDS (Global Data Space) is part of the middleware and is responsible for a central function of PLCnext Technology. It enables consistent data exchange between different real-time components. For additional information on the GDS, please refer to Section "GDS (Global Data Space)" on page 27.

The fieldbus manager connects the implemented fieldbus for the input and output of process data with PLCnext Technology. The following fieldbuses are supported (depending on the device):

- PROFINET controller
- PROFINET device
- Axioline F master (local bus)
- INTERBUS (with AXC F 2152 and AXC F IL Adapt)

Structure of PLCnext Technology

Service components	 The service components provide access to the ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager), GDS (Global Data Space), and to the following system components: OPC UA server Proficloud gateway Web-based management PLCnext Engineer HMI (HTML5 web visualization) Accessible via OS DCP SFTP VPN SSH NTP Trace controller
System components	 In the system components, all the basic functions of PLCnext Technology are implemented. System manager and PLC manager These components load all the other system components and monitor the stability of the system. ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager) The ESM enables IEC 61131-3, C++ and Matlab[®] Simulink[®] programs to be executed in real time. When creating applications, programming languages can be combined in any way. For additional information on the ESM, please refer to Section "ESM (Execu- tion and Synchronization Manager)" on page 21. User manager The user manager extends the standard Linux user management function. The differ- ent user roles are managed here. You can only execute operations in the PLCnext Technology firmware with a defined user role. You can select one or more user roles containing different permissions for each user. eCLR ProConOS embedded CLR is the open IEC 61131 control runtime system for different automation tasks.
Real-time user programs	User programs are not supplied as a standard with the PLCnext Technology firmware; they are created by the user. These user-defined programs can be created in conventional pro- gramming languages in accordance with IEC 61131-3, and also in C++ or Matlab [®] Sim- ulink [®] . It is also possible to combine different programming languages. The easiest way to use PLCnext Technology is to create user programs in programming languages in accordance with IEC 61131-3, in C++ or using Matlab [®] Simulink [®] , and to ex- ecute these in the real-time environment of the ESM. The user programs are downloaded to the controller and, after a cold restart of the device, are executed by the firmware.

The IN and OUT ports of the GDS guarantee data consistency and ensure seamless data exchange between tasks and programs.



Figure 2-2 Task handling with ESM and GDS

2.1 Internal user components

Users can add their own components, so-called internal user components, to PLCnext Technology. The system manager loads and monitors these internal user components (see Section 2.3 "System manager"). All available PLCnext Technology APIs can be used:

- RSC (Remote Service Call): each component (system, service, I/O components) features a selection of individual services that can be called and used via RSC (see Section "RSC (Remote Service Calls)" on page 42).
- Component interface: the firmware calls the implemented functions of the component interface at certain times, e.g., during program startup.
- Data access: read and write access to the GDS (Global Data Space)

Common classes: easy retrieval of system functions, e.g., file operations, socket services, threading (see Section "Common classes" on page 126).



Figure 2-3 PLCnext Technology – internal user components

2.2 External user components

Internal user components are used to add new, internal functions. It can also be necessary to incorporate external processes. This may be the case if, for example, extensive software components such as Java[®] Frameworks or .Net Core[®] are used. These can be integrated as external user components. They can be started along with the PLCnext Technology framework.



Figure 2-4 PLCnext Technology - external user components

2.3 System manager

PLCnext Technology is an open platform. This means that as a user you can integrate your own components and programs. During firmware startup, the system manager ensures that all integrated components and programs are configured and started in the right order. Here, all system processes are generated and internal user components are supplemented. A system component is always started, configured and shut down by the system manager.

2.4 PLC manager

The PLC manager is a firmware component that loads the necessary PLC program code into the memory and boots up or shuts down the programs. The program code can exist of an IEC 61131-3 program that was created and sent using PLCnext Engineer. The code can also be created in C++ or Matlab[®] Simulink[®]. C++ and Matlab[®] Simulink[®] programs are available on the controller as program code libraries (shared object, *.so). Configuration files on the controller are used to determine which libraries the PLC manager is to load and which programs in these libraries it is to instantiate. The PLC manager is therefore superordinate to the code. It controls boot up and shut down of the real-time system (ESM) as well as stopping and starting of data exchange via fieldbuses. If the controller is in the "stop" state, the real-time tasks monitored by the ESM are not executed. The signals of the sensors connected to the fieldbus are no longer read as inputs, and the output signals are no longer sent to the connected actuators.

The controller can be started in three different modes:

– Cold restart:

During a cold restart, all data is reset.

– Warm restart:

During a warm restart, all data is reset and all remanent data is restored (system start). Note: In firmware version 1.x, remanent data is only located in the eCLR/IEC programming environment.

Hot restart: During a hot restart, the data is neither reset nor restored. All variable values are retained.

2.5 Managing of components

PLCnext Technology is based on components that are included via the "IComponentInterface" interface (see Section ""IComponent" and "ComponentBase"" on page 117).

rol The ACF (Application Control Framework) is a part of the system manager and manages the internal user components. The ACF is a framework that enables component-based platform development and the configurative composition of the firmware for the devices. It enables the dynamic and configurative integration of user functions into the system. The components managed by the ACF are thus firmware components and user components that are executed independently of the PLC program. The ACF generates the components when booting the firmware.

For additional information on the ACF, please refer to Section "ACF (Application Component Framework)" on page 123.

Application Control Framework

PLC manager / Program Library Manager	One firmware component that is managed by the ACF is the PLC manager (see "PLC manager" on page 16). It manages the PLC program (real-time user program). The associated components and libraries that make these user programs available are managed by the PLC manager via the PLM (Program Library Manager, see 5.4 on page 122). The configuration is executed with a file referenced by /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Plc/Plm/Plm.config. The PLC manager generates the components when loading the program. For additional information on the PLC manager and Program Library Manager, please refer to Sections "PLC manager" on page 16 and ""IComponent" and "ComponentBase"" on page 117.
Delimitation of ACF and PLM	 ACF and PLM use the same ILibrary and IComponent interface (see Sections ""ILibrary" and "LibraryBase" on page 116 and ""IComponent" and "ComponentBase" on page 117). ACF and PLM use the same format for configuration files (see Section "Configuration
	files" on page 17).Only components that are managed via PLM can make programs available that can be
	 instantiated in ESM tasks (IProgramProvider, see Section 5.2.1 on page 119). Only components that are managed via the PLM can be stopped, modified and started up via download from PLCnext Engineer. This is also the case for ESM tasks and the programs instantiated therein.
	 For components that are managed via the ACF, the firmware must be stopped, started or rebooted.
	 Components that are managed via the ACF are retained, even if the PLC program is shut down, deleted or booted.
	2.6 Configuration files
	With PLCnext Technology, you can load programs and program instances onto the control- ler even without the PLCnext Engineer software. You can, for example, create a program in Eclipse [®] with C++ and transfer it directly to the controller. All of the important and necessary settings can be configured directly in the configuration files on the controller. The file system of the controller is accessed via the SFTP protocol. Use a suitable SFTP client software for this, e.g., WinSCP. The configuration files are XML files. You can edit them using an editor of your choice. The configuration files are imported following the boot procedure of the PLCnext Technology firmware. If there are no configuration errors in the configuration files, the components and program instances are subsequently executed by the ESM.
	When PLCnext Engineer is used, all configuration files are created by PLCnext Engineer and downloaded to the controller.
	2.6.1 acf, esm, gds configuration files
acf.config	The acf.config configuration file contains information on the library, component and pro- gram instances, as well as processes of shared objects (C++ programs).
	The information is required by the ESM in order to load shared objects and to execute com- ponent instances or programs.
	There are two ways to instantiate components:
	 Included in Default.acf.config (projects/Default/Default.acf.config) Included in Plm.config (projects/Plc/Plm/Plm.config)

esm.config	The esm.config configuration file contains the task configuration, the instantiation of pro- grams, and assignment to a processor core (one ESM per processor core). For additional information, please refer to Section "Task configuration via configuration files" on page 23.
gds.config	The gds.config configuration file contains the port definition as well as assignment of IN and OUT ports. For additional information, please refer to Section "GDS configuration using configuration files" on page 34.

2.6.2 .tic file



Phoenix Contact recommends creating the .tic files with the PLCnext Engineer software.

The .tic configuration file contains information on the bus configuration with the associated I/O process data of the IN and OUT ports.

2.6.3 Metafiles

Metadata describes classes and types of components and programs that were created in a PLCnext Technology application. They are required for using the program in PLCnext Engineer.

The metafile for the library (*.libmeta) contains links to the metafiles for the incorporated components (*.compmeta). These, in turn, link to the metafiles of the connected programs (*.progmeta). Configuration of the GDS data ports (IN or OUT ports) is defined in the *.progmeta file.

When the PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface, see Section "PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface)" on page 151) creates the C++ project, the *.compmeta, *.libmeta and *.progmeta metafiles are created automatically. The files are interlinked, as shown in Figure 2-5.



The LibraryBuilder combines the metadata and the code (*.so) into a library. This can be imported into PLCnext Engineer and used in the same way as an IEC 61131-3 program. Tasks and flow of data are configured directly in PLCnext Engineer. The PLCnCLI (see Section "Functions of the PLCnCLI" on page 153) generates the metafiles.

Example of a component list and a shared object (*.so) in the *.libmeta metafile:

</Library>

</MetaConfigurationDocument>

Example of a program list in the *.compmeta metafile:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<MetaConfigurationDocument
    xmlns="http://www.phoenixcontact.com/schema/metaconfig"
   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
   schemaVersion="2.0">
    <Component type="CPP Counter C" >
        <!-- List of programs referenced in this component -->
        <ProgramIncludes>
           <Include path="CPP Counter P/CPP Counter P.progmeta" />
        </ProgramIncludes>
        <!-- List of component ports -->
        <Ports>
           <Port name="IP CppEnable bit" type="boolean" dimensions="1" attributes="Input|OpcUa" />
           <Port name="IP_CppSwitches_uint8" type="uint8" dimensions="1" attributes="Input|Ehmi"/>
           <Port name="OP_CppCounter_uint8" type="uint8" dimensions="1" attributes="Output"/>
        </Ports>
        -->
    </Component>
</MetaConfigurationDocument>
```

Example of the definition of IN and OUT ports in the *.progmeta metafile:

```
</Program>
```

```
</MetaConfigurationDocument>
```

2.6.4 Generating configuration files with PLCnext Engineer

The following description applies for all three *.config types (acf.config, esm.config, gds.config). The configuration files are automatically created when the PLCnext Engineer software is used. During the download, they are saved to the controller in the respective folder (e.g., /opt/plcnext/projects/PCWE/Esm for the PCWE.esm.config file) in the controller file system. This folder is intended for the download from PLCnext Engineer. The PCWE folder is automatically created and managed by PLCnext Engineer. **Do not store any other files here because PLCnext Engineer completely deletes this folder prior to the download**. When the configuration in PLCnext Engineer changes and the project is once again downloaded to the controller, the previous configuration files are overwritten. Manual changes are also lost.

2.6.5 Manual configuration

To make manual changes to the configuration files or to create new configuration files, you can copy the files generated by PLCnext Engineer and rename them. You can then manually configure these files. To prevent overwriting your own configuration files in the "PCWE" folder when downloading the project again from PLCnext Engineer, proceed as follows:

- Under /opt/plcnext/projects/ in the file system of the controller, create a new folder and name it accordingly. E.g., /opt/plcnext/projects/Example/
- Save the files to this folder.
- Include the configuration files via the Include path command (see example below).

The folder can be used for saving additional configuration files and for the manual, configurative extension of the components.

The **Include** mechanism is used to state which configuration files are to be used for the configuration. If files that are not in the folder used for inclusion are to be included, the respective path has to be specified. In the following example, all files that are in the same directory as the "Default.gds.config" file are included, i.e., /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Plc/GDS (<Include path=""*.gds.config" />). If you want to include all the config files that are in the respective folder, replace the specific file name with an * (e.g., *.gds.config). This results in all files with the same file extension being included.

Example: Include path:

In the example, all GDS configuration files from the following directories are included in the configuration. **"**\$ARP_PROJECTS_DIR\$" is a PLCnext Technology environment variable with the value /opt/plcnext:

- "Default": /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Plc/GDS (created by the firmware)
- "PCWE": /opt/plcnext/projects/PCWE/Plc/GDS (created by PLCnext Engineer)
- "Example": /opt/plcnext/projects/Example (created by the user)



When editing configuration files, observe the information in Sections "Task configuration via configuration files" on page 23 and "GDS configuration using configuration files" on page 34.

2.7 ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager)

PLCnext Technology also features task handling. The Execution and Synchronization Manager (ESM) performs task handling, monitoring, and chronological sequencing of programs from different programming languages. Each processor core of a controller is managed by one ESM. One ESM is therefore assigned to one processor core. If a controller has more than one processor core, then there are also several ESMs (example: controller AXC F 2152: 2 processor cores and 2 ESMs).

The ESM has the following advantages:

- Configuration and monitoring of cyclic tasks and idle tasks.
- The execution times of the tasks are available as system variables and can be used for diagnostics.
- System balancing.
- Multicore systems are supported.

The ESM can also be used to execute programs and program parts that were created in different programming environments in real time. These can include high-level languages such as (C++), IEC 61131-3 code, and model-based tools such as Matlab[®] Simulink[®]. Program parts that were created using different programming languages can also be combined and processed within a task. The EMS controls the processes and also executes the high-

level language programs deterministically in the defined order. To ensure data consistency between the tasks at all times, all data is synchronized with the GDS whenever a task is called (see also Section "GDS (Global Data Space)" on page 27).



Figure 2-6 ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager)

2.7.1 Task configuration with PLCnext Engineer

You can use the PLCnext Engineer software to easily create and configure tasks. Here, you can proceed as in a conventional IEC 61131-3 program. The IEC 61131-3 program, or the program created in a different programming environment and then imported into PLCnext Engineer, can be instantiated in a task. It does not matter whether the programs were created with C/C++, IEC 61131-3 or Matlab[®] Simulink[®].

In the PLCnext Engineer "Tasks and Events" editor, you can instantiate a task and assign it to the desired program instances. A description of this procedure and further information on task handling with PLCnext Engineer is available in the online help, the PLCnext Engineer quick start guide (PLCNEXT ENGINEER, Order no. 1046008), and the AXC F 2152 controller user manual (Order no. 2404267). The documentation for the respective products can be downloaded at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>. You can call the online help from within PLCnext Engineer.

Tasks und Events 🗄 Datenliste 🤅 Online-Paramete						
	Tasks	und Events				* - □
Ψ.,					Suche	đ
Name	Eventname	Programmtyp	Intervall (ms)	Priorität	Watchdog (ms)	Komment
✓ III, ESM1						
Cyclic100			100	0	100	
MainInstance		Main				
Program_1_Moving_Light		Moving_Light_Prog				
Programminstanzname eingeben		Programmtyp auswählen				
Taskname eingeben						
✓ ^{±±} , ESM2						
Taskname eingeben						

Figure 2-7 Example: tasks and program instances in PLCnext Engineer

2.7.2 Task configuration via configuration files

i

When a project is downloaded from PLCnext Engineer to the controller, the previous configuration files are overwritten with the new configuration files. Section "Manual configuration" on page 20 describes how you can safely store your manually modified configuration in the controller file system, thus preventing the loss of data.

You can also modify the task configuration, the instantiation of programs and the assignment to a processor core (one ESM per processor core) without PLCnext Engineer via configuration files in XML format. All of the important settings can be configured directly in the configuration file on the controller. To modify the configuration manually, the XML file can be edited using any editor. The ESM can load one or several configuration files and create a joint configuration.

Example of a configuration file:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<EsmConfigurationDocument xmlns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" schemaVersion="1.0" xmlns="http://www.phoe-
nixcontact.com/schema/esmconfig">
    <Tasks>
         <PreDefinedEventTask name="Cold" stackSize="0" eventName="Arp.Plc.Esm.OnColdStart"
         confirmed="false" priority="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
         <PreDefinedEventTask name="Warm" stackSize="0" eventName="Arp.Plc.Esm.OnWarmStart"
         confirmed="false" priority="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
         <preDefinedEventTask name="Except" stackSize="0" eventName="Arp.Plc.Esm.OnException" confirmed="false" priority="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
         <IdleTask name="Idle" stackSize="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
         <preDefinedEventTask name="interbus" stackSize="0" eventName="Arp.Io.Interbus.OnCycleEnd"</pre>
         confirmed="true" priority="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
    </Tasks>
    <EsmTaskRelations>
         <EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="Cold" />
         <EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="Warm" />
        <EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="Execpt" />
<EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="Idle" />
<EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="interbus" />
    </EsmTaskRelations>
    <Programs>
         <program name="Main1" programType="Main" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />
         <Program name="Main2" programType="Main" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />
         <Program name="Main3" programType="Main" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />
         <Program name="Main4" programType="Main" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />
         <Program name="Main5" programType="Main" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />
    </Programs>
    <TaskProgramRelations>
         <TaskProgramRelation taskName="Cold" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/Main1" order="0" /> <TaskProgramRelation taskName="Warm" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/Main2" order="0" />
         <TaskProgramRelation taskName="Execpt" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/Main3" order="0" />
         <TaskProgramRelation taskName="Idle" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/Main4" order="0" />
         <TaskProgramRelation taskName="interbus" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/Main5" order="0" />
    </TaskProgramRelations>
<TaskEvents />
</EsmConfigurationDocument>
```

To configure tasks for execution in the ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager) using the *.esm.config configuration file, proceed as follows:

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

Defining a task

A task is defined between tags <Tasks> and </Tasks>.

Example of defining a task:

<Tasks>

```
<CyclicTask name="SquareWave_Cycle" stackSize="0" priority="0" cycleTime="10000000"
watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
<CyclicTask name="CPP_Cycle" stackSize="0" priority="0" cycleTime="10000000"
watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
<CyclicTask name="PCWE_Cycle" stackSize="0" priority="0" cycleTime="10000000"
watchdogTime="10000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
<CyclicTask name="PCWE_Cycle" stackSize="0" priority="0" cycleTime="10000000"
watchdogTime="10000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
<CyclicTask name="PCWE_Cycle" stackSize="0" priority="0" cycleTime="10000000"
</pre>
```

```
<Tasks>
```

```
<PreDefinedEventTask name="Cold" stackSize="0" eventName="Arp.Plc.Esm.OnColdStart"
    confirmed="false" priority="0" watchdogTime="100000000" executionTimeThreshold="0" />
</Tasks>
```

Definition of the task starts with the task type.

Here, enter the type:

- CyclicTask = Cyclic task
- IdleTask = Idle task
- PreDefinedEventTask = System event task (cold restart, warm restart, hot restart, stop, exception)
- Define the tasks using the attributes from the following table:

Attribute	Description
name	The name attribute defines the task name.Enter the task name.The name must be unique. It can only be used once per controller.
priority	 The priority attribute defines the task priority. Enter a value to specify the task priority. 0: Highest priority 31: Lowest priority 32: Reserved for idle task (no priority is indicated for an idle task)
cycleTime	 The cycleTime attribute defines the duration of the task (for cyclic tasks only). Enter the value in nanoseconds. The minimum value of the AXC F 2152 controller is 500000 ns = 500 μs. Select a multiple of the minimum value. Depending on the application, the jitter time for a task may increase as the system load increases.

Attribute	Description				
watchdogTime	The watchdog monitors whether the task was executed within the specified time.				
	• Enter the value in nanoseconds. Value "0" means that there is no monitoring.				
	The watchdogTime attribute can be used for cyclic and idle tasks.				
EventName	The following values are valid for this attribute.				
	 Arp.Plc.Esm.OnColdStart (cold restart) 				
	- Arp.Plc.Esm.OnWarmStart (warm restart)				
	 Arp.Plc.Esm.OnHotStart (hot restart) 				
	- Arp.Plc.Esm.OnStop (stop)				
	- Arp.Plc.Esm.OnException (exception)				

Assigning a task Once the task has been defined, it has to be assigned to the desired ESM. Assignment is defined between tags <EsmTaskRelations> and </EsmTaskRelations>.

Example: Assigning a task to an ESM

```
<EsmTaskRelations>

<EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="SquareWave_Cycle" />

<EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="CPP_Cycle" />

<EsmTaskRelation esmName="ESM1" taskName="PCWE_Cycle" />

</EsmTaskRelations>
```

Assign the task using the attributes from the following table:

Attribute	Description	
esmName	The esmName attribute defines the name of the ESM the respectitask is to be assigned to.	
	Enter the task name.	
	Example: ESM1 or ESM2 for a controller with dual core processor.	
taskname	The taskname attribute defines the task to be assigned.	
	• Enter the name of the task to be assigned.	

Instantiating of programs Once the task is defined and assigned to an ESM, programs can be instantiated. Programs are defined between tags <<u>Programs</u>> and <<u>/Programs</u>>. The definition of a program instance is introduced with the tag <<u>Programs</u>>. Programs that have been programmed in IEC 61131-3 can only be sent and configured with PLCnext Engineer. The code example originates from a config file generated with PLCnext Engineer.

Instantiating of programs (example):

```
<programs>

<Program name="SquareWave" programType="PCWE_SquareWave_P" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />

<Program name="CPP_Counter" programType="CPP_Counter_P"

componentName="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1" />

<Program name="CPP_Counter_P1" programType="CPP_Counter_P"

componentName="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1" />

<Program name="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1" />

<Program name="PCWE_Counter" programType="PCWE_Counter_P" componentName="Arp.Plc.Eclr" />

</Programs>
```

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

 The name attribute defines the name of the program instance. Enter the name of the program instance. The name must be unique within the controller. The programType attribute defines the program type.
The programType attribute defines the program type.
Enter the program type.
 The componentName attribute defines the name of the component that contains the program. Enter the name of the component as it is defined in the *.acf.config configuration file. The "Arp.Plc.Eclr" component is reserved for IEC 61131-3 programs that were instantiated with PLCnext Engineer. See Section 6.2.3 "Creating a new C++ project in Eclipse®"
th •

• Instantiate programs using the attributes from the following table:

Assigning program instances to a task The program instances have to be assigned to a task. Assignment is made between tags <TaskProgramRelations> and </TaskProgramRelations>.

Assigning program instances to a task:

```
<TaskProgramRelations>
```

•

<TaskProgramRelation taskName="SquareWave_Cycle" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/SquareWave" order="0" /> <TaskProgramRelation taskName="CPP_Cycle" programName="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1/CPP_Counter" order="0" /> <TaskProgramRelation taskName="CPP_Cycle" programName="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1/CPP_Counter_P1" order="1" /> <TaskProgramRelation taskName="PCWE_Cycle" programName="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PCWE_Counter" order="0" /> </TaskProgramRelations>

Assign the program instance to a task using the attributes from the following table.

Attribute	Explanation
taskname	 The taskname attribute specifies the name of the task the program instance is to be assigned to. Enter the name of the desired task the program instance is to be assigned to.
programName	 The programName attribute defines the name of the program instance with the prefixed library and component names. The name is used to select the program instance to be processed in the task. Enter the full name into the program instance to be processed.
order	 The order attribute determines the order in which program instances are processed within a task, starting with 0. Enter a number to determine the processing sequence. The program instance with the digit 0 is processed first. Each number can only be used once for each task.

2.8 GDS (Global Data Space)

The GDS enables communication relationships and data exchange between tasks and programs that were created in different programming languages. The GDS also ensures that inconsistencies as shown in the following example are prevented:

While tasks are being processed and data is being exchanged directly between tasks, read and write access can overlap due to different cycles and intervals. In the example in Figure 2-8, task 1 – with medium priority – begins processing and, once completed, outputs a value. This value is used by task 2 as an input value. Task 2 starts processing using this input value, and then the processing is interrupted by another start of task 1. Task 1 has a higher priority and is processed again, while task 2 is paused. At the end of processing task 1, a new value is output that is again sent to task 2 as an input value. Once task 1 is finished, processing of task 2 is continued. However, because the input value has changed in the meantime, there is data inconsistency which may lead to problems. The use of the GDS can prevent such inconsistencies.



Figure 2-8 Example of data inconsistency

2.8.1 Port-based communication

With the GDS, it is easy to establish communication relationships between different programs. This communication between the PLCnext Technology programs is implemented via ports. A port represents an endpoint of a component within a PLCnext Technology application. Via a port, data can be exchanged with other components (e.g., program instances and I/O systems). To enable this type of data exchange, the program variables to be exchanged or process data of the I/O components are defined as IN or OUT ports. The data that is written from the tasks into the GDS is written via OUT ports. Tasks that receive input data read this data from the GDS via IN ports. Using the ports ensures data consistency and correctly functioning communication relationships at all times.



Figure 2-9 Example: Inter-task communication with ESM and GDS

The IN and OUT ports are coupled via buffer mechanisms and synchronized during execution.

- Start of a task cycle (OnTaskExecuting): The IN ports are read from the GDS buffer storage units by the program instances to be called in the task.
- End of a task cycle (OnTaskExecuted): The OUT ports are written to the GDS buffer storage units by the program instances to be called in the task.

The following figure shows the behavior of task 1:





Data exchange for IN ports and OUT ports takes place at the beginning and at the end of each task execution. This only concerns data exchange of IN and OUT ports whose programs have been instantiated in different tasks. Ports within the same task are exchanged within the task. Furthermore, data exchange is only executed if the program instances are linked to one another via IN and OUT ports. This ensures that the data is always stable and consistent during execution.

The following figure shows the behavior of task 1 and task 2:





The following applies to the connection of IN and OUT ports:

- OUT ports can be shared within an application. One OUT port can be connected to several IN ports.
- An IN port can only be connected to one OUT port.

1

_

Further information on connecting ports is available in the PLCnext Engineer online help (see "Role mapping: Assigning PLCnext ports").

2.8.2 Fieldbus connection

Connection via IN and OUT ports

In addition to the communication between different tasks, process data from and to fieldbuses can also be exchanged via IN and OUT ports. Fieldbus systems also have buffer storage units, although these are arranged logically within the fieldbus component itself. Values are written to and read from these buffer storage units by the GDS. The fieldbus performs further handling.

Figure 2-12 "Example: Fieldbus communication via IN and OUT ports" shows the behavior of fieldbus communication via ports.



Figure 2-12 Example: Fieldbus communication via IN and OUT ports

All the components of a PLCnext Technology application as well as I/O components that are part of the data exchange process must be connected via IN and OUT ports. At the beginning of a task, the task retrieves the data from the buffer storage unit. At the end of the task, the calculated values are actively rewritten to the buffer storage unit. Therefore, the buffer storage unit is the data exchange area between an IN and an OUT port. The IN and OUT port connection between fieldbus components and tasks shows an analog behavior to the data exchange via ports between several tasks (see Section 2.8.1 "Port-based communication" on page 27).

By using the IN and OUT ports, the variable values are updated in the task context. The data is written to or read from the GDS buffer storage unit and is available to a task for the entire cycle. Using the IN and OUT ports secures task-internal data consistency. The fieldbus data is consistent as it comes from the same sampling cycle, and is also consistent within the task cycles. This also applies if programs are interrupted and a fieldbus is updated within this period of interruption. The variable value is buffered in the GDS and is available to the task for the period of time it requires to process all related programs, even with interruption.

When a fieldbus is connected to an ESM task, I/O data can be exchanged via the IN and OUT ports. For this, declare the variables in the data list of the "PLCnext" node of PLCnext Engineer as IN or OUT ports. The I/O data is updated in the update cycle of the ESM task.

Example Port connection A cyclic task has an update rate of 30 ms, for example. The user programs of the task consume the I/O data of the linked I/O variables. The I/O variables are updates at a cycle of 30 ms and are available to the programs. In this way, the programs in the task can also use the latest values. At the beginning of the task, the data is written from the fieldbus OUT port to the IN port of the task. At the end of the task, the output data is written to the IN port of the fieldbus via the OUT port of the task.



Figure 2-13 Fieldbus connection via ports

Connection via resource-global variables



To avoid inconsistent I/O data and the resulting errors, Phoenix Contact recommends to implement the fieldbus connection via the IN and OUT ports.

Resource-global variables as input

When creating your application, remember that there is no claim for data consistency when using resource-global variables. According to IEC 61131-3, resource-global variables can be used as an input in all Program Organization Units (POE) of the current resource. Several ESM tasks can access the fieldbus I/O data declared as resource-global variable. Declare the variables as "Program" in the local variable table or in the PLCnext Engineer data lists. This way, the I/O data can be used in the programs of different tasks. The update rate of the resource-global variable always depends on only one task. For the update behavior, an ESM task can be selected. You can make the setting in PLCnext Engineer:

Open the respective node in the "PLANT" area for this.



From the "Update task" drop-down list in the "Settings" editor, select the desired task.



٠

NOTE: "GLOBALS" task update behavior

If no update task is selected that triggers the update cycle, the "GLOBALS" task is used (low priority and update rate of 50 ms). You can set one update task each for the groups of fieldbuses, ESM system variables and the system variables of the PLCnext Engineer HMIs.

Resource-global variables as output

Usually, resource-global variables are only used once as an ouput in order to avoid unintentional overwriting of values.



Note: If you use resource-global variables several times as an output, the last value overwrites the previous values. Example of fieldbus connection via resource-global variables In the example in Figure 2-15, the update rate of the global variable depends on the cycle time of ESM task 1. The update time of 30 ms for the global variables therefore also applies to ESM task 2 and other tasks, if applicable. The cycle time of ESM task 2 is 20 ms. Still, it must process the cycle with the values synchronized by task 1. For task 2, this means that the data does not exactly correspond to the current process data image of the fieldbus components, but that data can be up to 30 ms old.





Interruption of tasks

If task 2 from the example in Figure 2-15 has a higher priority than task 1, it might be the case that task 1 is interrupted by task 2 when updating fieldbus data. Then, task 2, with its higher priority, is processed. Once task 2 is processed, there already is an updated data image from the fieldbus due to the update rate. The interrupted task 1 is now continued and accesses the fieldbus data that is still missing. However, this data is not consistent with the data retrieved before interruption.



Take this behavior into consideration when creating your application. Processing of inconsistent data can result in errors in the process.

Comparison of connections via IN and OUT ports and resource-global variables

Connection via IN and OUT ports:

- Fieldbus data is consistent as it was retrieved and written to the buffer storage unit at the same time.
- Thanks to the GDS buffer storage units, fieldbus data is consistent during task processing.

- The user is not responsible for data consistency as it is ensured via the GDS buffer storage units.
- Connecting IN and OUT ports of the task and fieldbus components is complex and less flexible than using resource-global variables.



To avoid inconsistent I/O data and the resulting errors, Phoenix Contact recommends to implement the fieldbus connection via the IN and OUT ports.

Resource-global variables:

- At first sight, using resource-global variables seems to be quite easy.
- Update rates and interruptions of tasks due to priority can result in inconsistencies in the process data image.
- Inconsistent data can result in errors in the application.
- The user is responsible for data consistency, which is not ensured by the system.

2.8.3 GDS configuration with PLCnext Engineer

You can configure the GDS by connecting IN and OUT ports of programs to one another using the PLCnext Engineer software (see also 9 "Importing libraries into PLCnext Engineer").

In PLCnext Engineer, select the desired use as an IN or OUT port in the "Data List" editor of the "PLCnext" node for the respective process data. You can see an overview of all IN and OUT ports available in the GDS in the "Data List" editor. The programs communicate via the IN and OUT ports of the GDS. Communication is also possible between IEC 61131-3 programs, and programs that were created using other programming languages (e.g., C++). For this purpose, the IN and OUT ports must be assigned to one another.





		Data	List
🔹 🦙 📄 👾 🖕			
		IN Port	-
Arp.Plc.Eclr / SquareWave : OP Sig	Type BOOL	IN Port CPP Counter C-1/C	Type bit
Arp.Plc.Eclr / SquareWave : OP_Sig		Arp.Plc.Eclr / PCWE_Counter : IP_C	BOOL
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dio-1 / di		CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1 / C	uint8
CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1 / C	c uint8	axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dio-1 / dio	Bitstring8
Arp.Plc.Eclr / PCWE_Counter : OP_	USINT	axc2152-1 / dio-1 / ~DO8	Bitstring8
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1 / d	a Bitstring8	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1 / d	a BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1 / d	a BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1 / d	a BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1 / d	a BOOL	Select IN Port here	
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT00	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT01	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT02	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT03	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT04	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT05	BOOL
Select OUT POILTIEIE		axc2152-17 dio-17 00105	BUUL

Figure 2-16 Example: List of all available IN and OUT ports

A detailed description of the procedure and additional information on GDS configuration with PLCnext Engineer is available in the online help, the PLCnext Engineer quick start guide (PLCNEXT ENGINEER, Order no. 1046008) and the AXC F 2152 controller user manual (Order no. 2404267). The documentation for the respective products can be downloaded at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>. You can call up the online help from within PLCnext Engineer.

2.8.4 GDS configuration using configuration files



When a project is downloaded from PLCnext Engineer to the controller, the previous PLCnext Engineer configuration files are overwritten with the new configuration files. Section "Manual configuration" on page 20 describes how you can safely store your manually modified configuration in the controller file system, thus preventing the loss of data.

You can also modify the GDS configuration without PLCnext Engineer but using configuration files. All of the important settings can be configured directly in the *.gds.config configuration file on the controller. All configuration files (except *.libmeta) are created by PLCnext Engineer. To modify the configuration, the XML file can be edited using any editor. You will find the file in the "/opt/plcnext/projects/.../Plc" directory of your controller (see Section 2.14.1 "Directories of the firmware components in the file system"). The file system is accessed via the SFTP protocol. Use a suitable SFTP client software for this, e.g., WinSCP.

The individual connections with their respective IN and OUT ports are defined between the <<u>Connectors</u> and <<u>/Connectors</u> tags. A connector is a directed connection from <u>startPort</u> to <u>endPort</u>. An OUT port is entered as a <u>startPort</u> attribute and an IN port as an <u>endPort</u> attribute. Within the *.gds.config, each port has its own unique name that has the following structure:

ComponentInstanceName	<pre>/GroupName.VariableName</pre>
-----------------------	------------------------------------

Attribute	Explanation		
ComponentInstanceName	 Components of a PLCnext Technology application can be Programs PROFINET controllers (e.g., "Arp.lo.PnC"/"Arp.lo.PnD") The IEC 61131-3 runtime (e.g., Arp.Plc.Eclr.EclrComponent) Or a C++ application, (e.g., Counters.CppCounterComponent) 		
	Names that start with "Arp" are specified by the PLCnext Technology firmware. The names of the C++ applications are specified by the user during instantiation. Exception: When instantiating C++ or Matlab [®] Simulink [®] programs in PLCnext Engineer, the name of the component instance is specified by PLCnext Engineer.		
	There can be one or multiple instances of each component.		
	In the case of a PROFINET device, it is possible to gain access by entering the node ID (for more information, please refer to the online help within PLCnext Engineer). • Enter the name of the instance here.		
GroupName	 With program instances, the name is specified. The name of a program instance must be unique within the controller. Enter the name of the program instance. 		
	A local bus device is defined based on the position of the device in the local bus. The position numbering starts with digit 0.		
	 Enter the position number instead of GroupName. 		
VariableName	• Enter the name of the IN and OUT ports or the process data here, depending on the component type.		

Examples:

- Program port: startPort/endPort="Namespace.ComponentInstance/ProgramInstanceA.Freigabe"
- Fieldbus port: startPort/endPort="Arp.Io.AxlC/0.~D016"

Component port: startPort/endPort="ComponentInstance/Freigabe"

There are various types of ports that can be used for data exchange. The port concept can be used with the following process data:

Description	Code with example
Data of the runtime system of the controller	Enter the name of the program instance and the variable name as the port in the fol- lowing format: runtime system/program instance.variable name (e.g.,: Arp.Plc.Eclr/MainInstance.OUT_PORT_A) You can use global variables as well as IN and OUT ports.
Data of a high-language project on the controller	Enter the name of the program instance and the variable name as the port in the fol- lowing format (in accordance with the format in the *.acf.config file): library name.component instance/program instance.variable name (e.g.,: CppCounterLibrary.CppCounterComponent-1/CppCounterProgram1.IP- _CppEnable)
PROFINET process data	Enter the name of the PROFINET controller and the process data name as the port in the following format: PROFINET Controller/Node-ID.process data name (e.g.,: Arp.IO.PnC/46.~DI8)
Local bus process data	Enter the name of the local bus controller and the process data name as the port in the following format: Local bus controller/module position.process data name (e.g.,: Arp.Io.Ax1C/0.~D08)

The cycle for updating system variables can also be configured. Resource-global variables (IEC 61131-3) can be connected to fieldbus variables or variables of other ARP components. As these are connections of component global variables, the events of a permanently defined task (update task) are used for the cyclic update of variable values. You can configure the update time in PLCnext Engineer:

- Open the respective node in the "PLANT" area for this.
- Select the desired task from the "Update task" drop-down list in the "Settings" editor.

PLANT	axc-f-2152-1 / Axioline F 🛛 🗙		
Search of	🕞 Settings 🗧 Device List	Data List	
✓ Composition Project ✓ 📙 axc-f-2152-1 : AXC F 2152			Settings
C: PLCnext (2)	All	Axioline F controller	
MI Webserver	Axioline F controller	Number of connectable Axioline F devices:	63
## Profinet (0)	Update task Trigger task	Update task	
Axioline F (2)		System and global variables: (i)	~
		Trigger task	
	Profile	Trigger bus cycle: (j)	~
		Profile	
		Profile version:	7.0.0


You can select an	update task for t	the following variables:

Component	Variables	component tag (config file)
Controller	ESM system variables	Arp.Plc.Esm
HMI web server	HMI system variables	Arp.Services.Ehmi
Axioline	Axioline system variablesGlobal variables linked to I/O	Arp.Plc.AxlC
INTERBUS	 INTERBUS system variables Global variables linked to I/O 	Arp.Io.IbM
PROFINET	 PROFINET device system variables PROFINET controller system variables GlobVars linked to I/O 	- Arp.Io.PnD - Arp.Io.PnC
SPNS	Safety and PROFIsafe system variables	Arp.Services.SpnsProxy

You can selec	t an update	task for	the fol	lowin
---------------	-------------	----------	---------	-------

If you do not select a task for a component, the "Globals" task is used with a cycle time of 50 ms (default).

The settings made in PLCnext Engineer are saved to a *.gds.config file and downloaded to the controller.

The assignment of variables to an update task is made between tags <ComponentTaskRelations> and </ComponentTaskRelations>.

Example excerpt from a *.gds.config file. Here, the IN and OUT ports of an application are assigned to each other:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<GdsConfigurationDocument xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xm-
lns:xsd="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema" schemaVersion="1.0" xmlns="http://www.phoenixcon-
tact.com/schema/gdsconfig">
<ComponentTaskRelations>
    <ComponentTaskRelation component="Arp.Plc.Esm" task="Cyclic100" />
    <ComponentTaskRelation component="Arp.Plc.AxlC" task = "Task100ms" />
    <ComponentTaskRelation component="Arp.Services.SpnsProxy" task ="Task100ms" />
</ComponentTaskRelations>
<Connectors>
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/SquareWave.OP_Signal1"
    endPort="CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1/CPP_Counter.IP_CppEnable_bit" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/SquareWave.OP_Signal2"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PCWE_Counter.IP_CounterEnable" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/SquareWave.OP_Signal2" endPort="Arp.Io.PnC/20.OUT00" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_PLC_RUN" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND_S1_PLC_RUN" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_VALID_DATA_CYCLE"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND S1 VALID DATA CYCLE" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND S1 OUTPUT STATUS GOOD"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND_S1_OUTPUT_STATUS_GOOD" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_INPUT_STATUS_GOOD"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND_S1_INPUT_STATUS_GOOD" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_DATA_LENGTH"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND S1 DATA LENGTH" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND_S1_OUTPUTS" endPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_OUTPUTS" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.PnD/PND_S1_INPUTS" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/PND_S1_INPUTS" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.AxlC/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG HI"
    endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG HI" />
    <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.Ax1C/AXIO_DIAG_STATUS_REG_LOW"
```

Table 2-1

Update task

endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG LOW" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.Ax1C/AXIO DIAG PARAM REG HI" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG PARAM REG HI" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.Ax1C/AXIO DIAG PARAM REG LOW" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG PARAM REG LOW" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.AxlC/AXIO_DIAG_PARAM_2_REG_HI" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO_DIAG_PARAM_2_REG_HI" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.AxIC/AXIO DIAG PARAM 2 REG LOW" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO_DIAG_PARAM_2_REG_LOW" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.Ax1C/AXIO_DIAG_STATUS_REG_PF" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG PF" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.AxIC/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG BUS" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG BUS" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.AxIC/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG RUN" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG RUN" /> <Connector startPort="Arp.Io.Ax1C/AXIO_DIAG_STATUS_REG ACT" endPort="Arp.Plc.Eclr/AXIO DIAG STATUS REG ACT" />

2.8.5 Supported data types

The programs of a PLCnext Technology application communicate via IN ports and OUT ports. The combination of the following data types is supported.



When setting the IN and OUT ports with PLCnext Engineer, you can only enter permitted combinations of data types. If you implement the configuration without PLCnext Engineer but via the XML configura-

tion file, you have to ensure that only the data type combinations listed in Table 2-2 are used. If an invalid combination is configured, the startup process of the PLCnext Technology firmware is interrupted.

Information on the startup behavior of the firmware is available in the Output.log diagnostic file. The file contains status and error messages as well as warning notes that help you find the source of error. The Output.log file is stored in the controller file system in the "/opt/plcnext/logs" directory. The file system is accessed via the SFTP protocol. Use a suitable SFTP client software for this, e.g., WinSCP (see Section ""Template Loggable"" on page 129).

2.8.5.1 Elementary data types

Table 2-2 Supported data type combinations between C++, Simulink[®], and PLCnext Engineer programs

C++	Simulink [®]	PLCnext Engineer	Use in array data type	Use in struct data type
Boolean	Boolean	BOOL	x	x
int8	int8	SINT	x	x
uint8	uint8	USINT	x	x
int16	int16	INT	x	x
uint16	uint16	UINT	x	x
int32	int32	DINT	x	x
uint32	uint32	UDINT	x	x
int64		LINT	x	x
uint64		ULINT	x	x
uint8	uint8	BYTE	x	x

Structure of PLCnext Technology

C++	Simulink®	PLCnext Engineer	Use in array data type	Use in struct data type
uint16	uint16	WORD	x	x
uint32	uint32	DWORD	x	x
uint64		LWORD	x	x
float32	single	REAL	x	x
float64	double	LREAL	x	x
	Array of primitive data types			x

 Table 2-2
 Supported data type combinations between C++, Simulink[®], and PLCnext Engineer programs

The following data type combinations between C++ programs are supported:

StartPort	EndPort	StartPort	EndPort
			uint64
	Boolean		int32
	uint8	uint16	int64
	uint16		float32
	uint32		float64
	uint64		
aalaan	char8		uint32
loolean	int8		uint64
	int16	uint32	int64
	int32		float64
	int64		
	float32	uint64	uint64
	float64		
			int8
char8	char8	int8	int16
	uint16		int32
	uint32		int64
	uint64		float32
	int16		float64
	int32		
	int64		int16
	float32	\neg	int32
	float64	int16	int64
			float32
	uint8	\neg	float64
	uint16		
	uint32		int32
	uint64	int32	int64
uint8	int16		float64
	int32		
	int64	int64	int64
	float32		ł
	float64	41	float32
	•	float32	float64
vint16	uint16		
uint16	uint32	float64	float64

Table 2-3 Supported combinations of IN and OUT ports between C++ programs

2.8.5.2 Connection of structures

In addition to connecting elementary data types and arrays, the GDS also enables the connection of entire structures. Structures are data types that can exist of elements of different data types. The design of structures can be freely defined.

A StructConnector is used for connecting two struct ports. A StructConnector is a management object that is used to implement the connection of complete structures and the actual data transport. The connection logic of two struct ports therefore contains a comparison based on type definitions. It is checked whether the size of the structures, the data type, the offset, the dimensions, and the number of elements match. It is also checked if the alignment of the individual struct members is consistent. This is important for determining the binary compatibility of the structures. The check is implemented without the names of the individual struct members.

Complete copying The firmware completely copies the structures via memcpy(). Binary compatibility of the type definitions is required for this method.

To compare the size of the structure types and subsequently, the data types and offsets of the individual structure fields, a type check is run.

Below figure shows the connection of structures between tasks. Here, the communication between two programs is implemented via a type "SampleStruct" port



2.9 RSC (Remote Service Calls)

Internal user components can communicate with the PLCnext Technology core components via the RSC interface. You can access various functions and data items via the interfaces. For example, you can gain read and write access to GDS data using the "IDataAccessService" RSC service.



Figure 2-19 PLCnext Technology – RSC services

ServiceManager

You have the option of using the already registered RSC services of the SDK (Software Development Kit) via the ServiceManager. The ServiceManager acts as the RSC API and is used to request services.

For additional information on using RSC services, please refer to Section 5.8, "Using RSC services".

2.10 PLCnext embedded OPC UA server (eUA)

2.10.1 OPC UA

OPC Unified Architecture (UA) is a standardized protocol for the industrial IT and OT communication. On request, an OPC UA server provides an OPC UA client with process data and variable values from a running application.

The PLCnext controllers contain an embedded OPC UA server (eUA). It is integrated in the controller in addition to the runtime. It enables access to components, programs, function blocks, structures, and variables of PLCnext Technology.

2.10.2 Configuration

If a controller features an integrated OPC UA server, the server is displayed in the PLCnext Engineer software in the "PLANT" area ("OPC UA"). Here, you can configure the OPC UA server. The configuration is loaded to the controller as part of a PLCnext Engineer project and in form of a configuration file. It contains all parameters for setting the OPC UA server. All users of an OPC UA client must authenticate themselves to the OPC UA server

with a user name and a password. You can create a user via WBM of the controller (see Section "Web-based management (WBM)" on page 73). In the course of this, you have to assign the necessary roles:

- DataViewer
- DataChanger
- FileReader
- FileWriter

For additional information on user roles, please refer to Section ""User Authentication" page" on page 82.



For further information on configuring OPC UA in PLCnext Engineer, please refer to the PLCnext Engineer online help.

With PLCnext Engineer, the following configurations are possible:

- Defining the server endpoint URI
 Define the name of the network node the eUA server is to use in the server URI and in the endpoint URL.
- Defining a Global Discovery Server: Define which certificate the server is to use.
- Visibility of variables and alarms for the OPC UA clients: Due to security reasons, the variables and ports of a program in PLCnext Engineer are set to not visible by default. Visibility can be set in your PLCnext Engineer project. In the "PLANT" area, open the "OPC UA" node and then the "Basic settings". Via the "Visibility of variables" drop-down list, you can set the visibility of variables and alarms for the OPC UA clients.

OPC UA / OPC UA Serv	ver ×		
		OPC UA	
Basic settings	Endpoint		
Security	DNS Name / IP Address:	axc-f-2152-1	
Discovery server	Information Model		
	√isibility of variables:	None	`
Filesystem		None 🔶	
		Marked	
		All	

Figure 2-20 Setting the visibility of variables

- Privilege settings for data access:

You can configure access of clients to the file system of the server. Read and write access for clients to selected folders and files in the file system of the server as well as creating additional directories and files are possible. Once this option is active, only PLCnext Technology users with a "FileReader" or "FileWriter" role can read or write files. The required roles are assigned to the user in WBM of the controller (see Section ""User Authentication" page" on page 82).

2.10.3 OPC UA file access

All directories and files are displayed in the http://phoenixcontact.com/OpcUA/Files/ namespace. Via the namespace, the corresponding "NamespaceIndex" can be determined from the "NamespaceArray". The "NamespaceIndex" is a numeric value for identification of the namespace. It is saved in the "Namespace Array". Via the "NamespaceIndex" and the "Nodeldentifier", the released data and directories can be retrieved.

The initial entry point for released directories and files is the "FileSystem" folder of type "FolderType". In this folder, released files and directories are displayed, starting with the symbolic folder indicated in the config file.



The "Nodeldentifier" is structured as follows:

[Symbolic name] [directory name]/[file name]

Example: OpcUalOpcUa/Doc/doc.config





2.10.4 Alarms

You can exchange alarm and status messages between a program and the eUA server. For additional information, please refer to Section "Alarms" on page 48.

2.10.5 Subscriptions

An OPC UA client can subscribe to a list of variables that are then monitored for changes by the GDS. The variables are checked for changes at a defined interval. If a changed variable is detected during the cyclic check, the GDS informs the OPC UA server, which forwards the message to the client. When subscribing to a variable, the client can define a sample rate which is then served by the server. You can choose from predefined sample rates. Sample rates are device-specific. The sample rates for the AXF F 2152 controller are defined as follows, for example:

- 100 ms
- 250 ms
- 500 ms
- 1000 ms
- 2000 ms
- 5000 ms

If an OPC UA client requests a variable with the desired rate of 600 ms, for example, it will be assigned to the "500 ms" group. The server assigns the subscription to the group that is closest to the desired value and returns this value to the client as "RevisedSamplingInterval".

2.10.6 "GlobalDataSpace" namespace

All programs and variables from the IEC 61131 context are displayed in the http://phoenixcontact.com/OpcUA/PLCnext/GlobalDataSpace/ namespace. Via the namespace, the corresponding "NamespaceIndex" can be determined from the "NamespaceArray". The "NamespaceIndex" is a numeric value for identification of the namespace. It is saved in the "Namespace Array". Via the "NamespaceIndex" and the "NodeIdentifier", a corresponding process variable, structure, or function block can be retrieved. The "NodeIdentifier" is always structured as follows:

[component name]/[program name].[variable name]

Example: Arp.Plc.Eclr/PG_AllTypes1.DIntVar





Figure 2-24 "Arp.Plc.Eclr/PG_AllTypes1.DIntVar" (Software: UA Expert)

The component name for C++ components is defined in the respective C++ project. It therefore differs from the component name from the IEC 61131 context ("Arp.Plc.Eclr").

2.10.7 Device Integration (DI) namespace

In compliance with the "OPC UA for Devices" OPC UA Companion Specification, the eUA server provides the following nodes:

Node	Meaning		
DeviceManual	Path or URL to the user manual. Note: The eUA server does not support this node. Default value: Empty string		
DeviceRevision	General revision status of the device Note: The eUA server does not support this node. Default value: Empty string		
HardwareRevision	Hardware revision status, e.g., 02		
Manufacturer	Device manufacturer, e.g., "en", "Phoenix Contact"		
Model	Name of the model, e.g., "en", "AXC F 2152"		
RevisionCounter	Revision status of the static device data, e.g., 2		
SerialNumber	Device serial number, e.g., 13254768		
SoftwareRevision	Software version number e.g., 2019.0 LTS (19.0.0.15906)		

Table 2-4Device Integration node

2.10.8 Data types

For a mapping table containing the PLCnext Technology data types and the corresponding OPC UA data type, see Section "Available data types" on page 191.

2.10.9 UA server endpoints

The eUA server offers an endpoint to which the clients can connect. In its URL, you can either configure the IP address of the controller or the DNS name. Implement the configuration in the PLCnext Engineer software:

- In PLCnext Engineer, open the "OPC UA" node in the "PLANT" area.
- In the "Basic settings", either enter the DNS name or the IP address in the input field.

PLANT	OPC UA / OPC UA Server ×			
Search 🦉	-			
oject axc-f-2152-1 : AXC F 2152 🔰				OPC UA
 (:) PLCnext (2) ::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::	Basic settings	Endpoint		
HMI Webserver	Security	DNS Name / IP Address:	axc-f-2152-1	
## Profinet (0)	Discovery server	Information Model		
Axioline F (0)		Visibility of variables:	None	~
	Figure 2-25 End	point configuration		

2.10.10 Encryption algorithms

You can offer the following encryption algorithms for the endpoints to the OPC UA clients:

- Basic 128 RSA15
- Basic 256
- Basic 256 SHA256



By default, the "Basic128Rsa15" encryption algorithm is not active as this algorithm is no longer regarded as secure. However, you can activate this algorithm to be able to connect the eUA server to older OPC UA clients that support this algorithm at the maximum.

2.10.11 Ethernet ports at the controller

Currently, there is no mapping to a certain Ethernet port at the controller. Therefore, connection is possible via all connections.

2.10.12 Disabling user authentication

You can also work without security settings. To this end, deactivate the user authentication via web-based management of your controller. For a description as well as safety notes, see Section 3.9.1 on page 82. When the user authentication is disabled, the OPC UA client must not authenticate itself to the OPC UA server. This way, unrestricted access to the OPC UA server is possible.

2.11 Alarms

In PLCnext Technology, alarms are mapped as messages informing about status changes in the controller.

The alarms can be transmitted between different components. Possible alarm sources are the IEC 61131 alarm blocks, but also programs written in C++ or Matlab[®] Simulink[®]. A typical alarm recipient is the OPC UA server, which forwards the messages as OPC UA alarms to interested OPC UA clients. However, alarm clients that react to alarm messages can also be written in C++.

Alarms are defined by a complex status. All status changes are sent as a message by the alarm source. As the status changes are forwarded as OPC UA alarms, the statuses arise from the definition in the OPC UA specification.

Essential features of the alarm status are:

- Active The alarm condition is active.
- Acknowledged The user has seen the alarm condition.
- Confirmed The user has solved the problem that led to the alarm.
- Severity Severity of the alarm (from 1 = information to 1000 = severe error).
- Retain The alarm is to be shown to the user (is evaluated by the client).
- Message Message to be shown to the user.
- AlarmType Alarm type (can be used for filtering in the client).
- AlarmId Unique name of the alarm on the device.
- Time stamps for a variety of substatuses can be set as an option.

To introduce an alarm to the system, it first has to be registered. This has to be done before the first use. As a result, you in the OPC UA server which alarms can occur.

It is not possible to cancel alarms. However, they are deleted during each cold and warm restart. This is why alarms have to be registered after each cold or warm restart. Registering an alarm twice does not result in an error message.

Some alarms must be acknowledged and sometimes even confirmed. To do so, the "Acknowledge" and "Confirm" methods can be used. These are also messages in PLCnext Technology. However, they are sent from a client to the alarm source. The alarm source must process this message. Usually, this results in a new alarm status which, as usual, is sent to all clients.

Often there is the requirement to add additional information to an alarm, which is available in the client and can be displayed in the message. For this, there are alternative alarm blocks that can take on a structure with additional parameters. These parameters must be entered during registration so that they are known to the client. In the message, the parameters can be referenced using placeholders. The following placeholders are supported:

Placeholder	Meaning	
{0}	Alarm name	
	The name must be unique within the controller.	
{1}	Alarm type	
{2}	First user parameter	
{3}	Second user parameter	

Table 2-5Placeholders for additional parameters

The "ALM_ALARM" and "ALM_ALARM_PARAM" function blocks implement a defined semantics of the alarms. Via "Requires Acknowledge" and "Requires Confirm" only, you can specify if the alarm is to be acknowledged or confirmed. For more complex scenarios, you can write your own alarm blocks. This way you can, for example, check additional conditions, implement a different time behavior, or implement several alarms with one block. For these tasks, the "ALM_CUSTOM_ALARM" block is available. It provides the "Low Level" methods that were used for implementing the other blocks. The same functions are also available in C++.

2.11.1 IEC 61131 alarm function blocks

The alarm function blocks are part of the "PLCnext Controller" library.



Figure 2-26 "Alarming" function blocks

There are three types of alarm function blocks:

- 1. Standard alarm blocks ("ALM_REGISTER", "ALM_ALARM")
- 2. Blocks with user parameters ("ALM_REGISTER_PARAM", "ALM_ALARM_PARAM")
- 3. User-defined alarm blocks ("ALM_CUSTOM_ALARM")

Alarm blocks use the "ALM_ALARM" structure for internal data storage. It is used by the blocks and does not have to be described outside the block.

Standard alarm blocks To register an alarm, you can use the "ALM_REGISTER" function block. A rising edge or constant TRUE signal at the input introduces the alarm to the system. This function block must be called until the "DONE" output delivers a TRUE signal. If many alarms are registered at the same time, a FALSE signal might occur.

Several alarms can be registered in the same PLC cycle. However, if the "DONE" output outputs a FALSE signal, the registration can only be continued during the next cycle.



Figure 2-27 ""ALM_REGISTER" function block

To send alarm statuses, you can use the "ALM-ALARM" function block. With each change of the "ACTIVE" input, the new status is sent to the OPC UA server. This function block must be called until the "DONE" output outputs a TRUE signal. If many alarms are transmitted at the same time, a FALSE signal might occur. In this case, the call must be tried again in the next cycle.

The "AUTO_ACK" and "AUTO_CONF" inputs can be used to control if alarms require acknowledgement or confirmation. If both inputs are set to TRUE, the alarm will disappear as soon as the condition at the "ACTIVE" input changes to FALSE again. If acknowledgement or confirmation is desired, the function block has to process these requirements. It is therefore required that the function block is called continuously so that is can internally process these messages.



Figure 2-28 ALM_ALARM function block

Blocks with user parameters

To send user-defined parameters together with an alarm, you can use extended function blocks:

The user-defined parameters have to be introduced to the server via a structure. You can define and use a structure of up to ten parameters. The parameters must each have an elementary data type. For "ALM_REGISTER_PARAM", the names and types of the structure components are taken from the data type definition (worksheet) as names and types for the parameters. For the "ALM_ALARM_PARAM" function block, the values from the structure are transmitted with the alarm status.



Figure 2-29 "ALM_REGISTER_PARAM" function block



Figure 2-30 "ALM_ALARM_PARAM" function block

User-defined alarm blocks

Use the "ALM_CUSTOM_ALARM" function block to create your own alarm blocks. This might be useful if special timing or filter is required, for example. In addition, you can use the user-defined alarm block to set another semantics of "ACK", "CONF" or "RETAIN", or implement several alarms in a combined function block.

The "ALM_CUSTOM_ALARM" function block allows for access to methods of the subordinate alarm system. All methods are implemented as methods of the block.

ALM_CUSTOM_ALARM
💡 SendAcknowledge
💡 SendAddAlarm
💡 SendConfirm
💡 SendStateChange
💡 ShouldAcknowlege
🏫 ShouldConfirm



The following methods send the corresponding messages to the OPC-UA server:

- "SendAcknowledge"
- "SendAddAlarm"
- "SendConfirm"
- "SendStateChange"

Use the following methods to determine if the function block has received the "Acknowledge" or "Confirm" wish:

- "ShouldAcknowledge"
- "ShouldConfirm"

Acknowledging and confirming alarms

Instead of the OPC UA server, you can also use the "ALM_ACK" and "ALM_CONF" function blocks to acknowledge and confirm any alarm. The alarms are clearly identified by the "ALARM ID".



Figure 2-32 "ALM_ACK" and "ALM_CONF" function blocks

2.11.2 Alarms in C++ programs

For programming in C++, the PLCnext Technology SDK provides the "AlarmAccess" class. It can be used for alarm sources and alarm sinks.

During initialization of PLCnext Technology, the "AlarmAccess" class should be instantiated and initialized (e.g., in "SetupConfig" of a PLCnext Technology component). C++ programs can use the instance to send alarms. Using one instance for all alarms makes sense because many "AlarmAccess" instances would result in a correspondingly large number of messages in PLCnext Technology, which would strain the system.

The classes can be included using the following headers:

```
#include "Arp/System/NmPayload/Alarms/AlarmAccess.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/NmPayload/Alarms/AlarmState.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/NmPayload/Alarms/AlarmUserParameter.hpp"
```

The alarm classes are included in the Arp::System::NmPayLoad::Alarms namespace. To use a class, you have to create an instance and call the **Init** method.

using namespace Arp::System::NmPayload::Alarms; AlarmAccess alarmAccess; alarmAccess.Init("PHOENIX.CppClient");//unique name for this AlarmAccess instance

The following methods are used for sending messages:

/// Announce a new alarm to the server (e.g. for browsing in OPC UA).

- /// the following fields are used:
- /// alarmId is a unique name of the alarm instance on the server

/// alarmType is a name of the subtype of DiscreteAlarmType that is generated as a result of
/// this method call

/// severity is a number between 1 and 1000 where 1 is informative and 1000 is a fatal error
/// the user parameters with name and type are mapped to variables of the new AlarmType
/// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 if empty string parameters
int32 AddAlarm(AlarmState& alarmState);

/// Inform the AlarmServer about a new alarm state
/// (coming alarms, going alarms / changes to sub states).

/// An alarm source can inform about state changes of its alarms.

/// Only the source should call this methods for its alarms.

```
/// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 if empty alarmId
int32 NewAlarmState(AlarmState& alarmState);
```

THESE NEWATAL INSTALE (ATALINSTALE& ATALINSTALE

/// A client can ask for acknowledgement of an alarm instance (if supported by an alarm).
/// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 if empty alarmId
int32 Acknowledge(const String& alarmId);
/// A client can ask for confirmation of an alarm instance (if supported by an alarm).
/// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 if empty alarmId
int32 Confirm(const String& alarmId);

You can use these methods to receive messages:

/// An alarm source the supports acknowledgable alarms should subscribe to /// acknowledge request by a client. /// As a result to a call of the handler function the alarm source might change /// the state of the alarm and call NewAlarmState again. /// Note: The provided handler function is called by a different thread! /// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 no handler function int32 SubscribeAcknowledge(std::function<void(const String& alarmId, const String& comment, const String& language, const String& user)> handler); /// An alarm source the supports confirmable alarms should subscribe to confirm request by a client. /// As a result to a call of the handler function the alarm source might change /// the state of the alarm and call NewAlarmState agein. /// Note: The provided handler function is called by a different thread! /// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 no handler function int32 SubscribeConfirm(std::function<void(const String& alarmId, const String& comment, const</pre> String& language, const String& user)> handler); /// A client can subscribe to AddAlarm calls /// (used e.g. by the OPC-UA Server to show the alarms in the address space). /// Note: The provided handler function is called by a different thread! /// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 no handler function int32 SubscribeAddAlarm(std::function<void(const AlarmState& alarmState)> handler);

/// A client can subscribe to NewAlarmState calls to track the state of alarms. /// Note: The provided handler function is called by a different thread! /// returns 0 if successful, -1 if not initialized, -2 no handler function int32 SubscribeNewAlarmState(std::function<void(const AlarmState& alarmState)> handler);

The alarm status is held in the "AlarmState" structure:

// State with sub states of an alarm. class AlarmState ł public: // unique Id of the alarm instance within the PLC String AlarmId; // type of the alarm. Use as key to lookup a localized text for the alarm message. String AlarmType; // optional message (if Message is empty the AlarmType is the key retrieval of a translated message) String Message; // indication if the alarm condition is true bool ActiveState; // timestamp for the last change of ActiveState DateTime ActiveStateChanged; // acknowledged state of the alarm (the user has seen the alarm) bool AckedState; // timestamp for the last change of AckedStateChanged DateTime AckedStateChanged;

// confirmed state of the alarm (the user has resolved the problem) bool ConfirmedState; // timestamp for the last change of ConfirmedStateChanged DateTime ConfirmedStateChanged; // the server wants to hide the alarm bool SuppressedState; // timestamp for the last change of SuppressedState DateTime SuppressedStateChanged; // severity between 1 and 1000 (1 = information; 1000 = fatal error) int16 Severity; // true to indicate that the alarm should be displayed to the client bool Retain; // timestamp for the last change of RetainChanged DateTime RetainChanged; // timestamp for the last change of AlarmChanged DateTime AlarmChanged; // User parameters std::vector<AlarmUserParameter> UserParameters; };

2.11.3 OPC UA server

The OPC UA server is the typical interface for accessing alarms. Here, alarm messages are mapped to OPC UA alarms. In the OPC UA Adress Space, you will find the alarms in the "Root/Objects/Server/Alarms". **Registered alarms** Here, all registered alarms are displayed with their alarm ID. Below, you will see the alarm status, with "ActiveState", "AckedState" or "Retain" as OPC UA properties. Alarm types The alarm types are written as subtypes of the "DiscreteAlarmType". You will find them in the OPC UA Address Space under "Root/Types/EventTypes/BaseEventType/Condition-Type/AcknowledgeableConditionType/AlarmConditionType/DiscreteAlarmType". Subscribing to events If you wish to be notified about alarm status changes, you can create an OPC UA subscription and subscribe to the "Root/Types/EventTypes/BaseEventType/ConditionType/AcknowledgeableConditionType/AlarmConditionType/DiscreteAlarmType" object. The subscription will then send events about all alarm status changes. Acknowledging and con-Alarms are acknowledged and confirmed via the standard OPC UA alarm function. Note firming alarms that the status change takes place in the alarm source (e.g., in the PLC program). Only after the alarm source has implemented the request for acknowledgement/confirmation, the OPC UA server will send the new event with the updated state ("AckedState" = TRUE, or "ConfirmedState" = TRUE). **Filtering alarms** During the OPC UA subscription, you can specify which alarm properties are to be sent with the event. Here, you can also include the user parameters, so that these values are transmitted consistently with the alarm from the source to the client.

2.12 Notification manager

The Notification manager enables sending and receiving of notifications between components on a controller. Notifications are messages referring to special events. They are identified via a name and can transport user data (payload). User data is information data without control or protocol information (no process data, no real-time requirements). Both the PLCnext Technology firmware and user-defined components can send notifications.

A sender can register a notification with a notification name with the Notification manager and thus make it known. Then, the sender can send notifications. One or several recipients subscribe under one notification name and receive all notifications that are published under this or a subordinate name. Notification names are structured hierarchically. When a part of the name is indicated, all subordinate notifications can be received. Communication can be from one component to one or several recipients. As a basis, the Notification manager uses RSC services to transmit messages between the components.



Figure 2-33 Notification manager

The Notification manager is suitable, e.g., for the following scenarios:

- Network settings have been changed
- Network interface up/down (link up/link down: connection established/interrupted)
- New component added
- Detected error, exception in one component

For additional information on using the notification manager in a C++ component, please refer to Section "Notifications" on page 147.

2.12.1 Notifications of the PLCnext Technology firmware

Table 2-6 Notifications triggered by the firmware

NotificationName	SenderName	Severity	PayloadTypeName	PayloadString
Arp.Device.Interface.Ether- netLinkStateChanged	Device interface	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Device::Ether- netLinkStatePayload	Link state changed: interface {number}, port {number}, status: {"Up" "Done"}
Arp.Device.Interface.Exten- sionModulesState	Device interface	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Device::PciDe- viceStatePayload	Extension device status: {"OK" "Diagno- sis" "Error"}
Arp.Device.Interface.Net- workConfigurationChanged	Device interface	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Device::Net- workConfigurationChangedPayload	Configuration of network interface {num- ber} changed: {Parameter} = {Value}

NotificationName	SenderName	Severity	PayloadTypeName	PayloadString
Arp.Device.Interface.Net- workConfigurationFailed	Device interface	Error	Arp::System::NmPayload::Device::Net- workConfigurationChangedPayload	Configuration of network interface {num- ber} failed: {Parameter} = {Value}
Arp.Device.Interface.Sd- CardStateChanged	Device interface	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Device::Sd- CardStateChangedPayload	sd card state changed: sdCardId {"1"}, state {"true" "false"}
Arp.lo.PnC.ArAbort	Arp.Io.PnC	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::MessageWithStationNamePayload	"Connection to device established: {Sta- tionName}"
				"Connection to device with differences est tablished: {StationName}"
Arp.lo.PnC.ArReady	Arp.lo.PnC	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::lo::Profinet- Stack::MessageWithStationNamePayload	Connection to device aborted: {station- Name}
Arp.lo.PnC.PnStationStat- eChanged	Arp.lo.PnC	Internal	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::PnStationStatePayload	Led state changed: Arp.lo.PnC (Control- ler), BF={"On" "Off"}, SF={"On" "Off"}
Arp.lo.PnC.ResetToFacto- ryDefaults	Arp.lo.PnC	Info	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	This station is reset to factory defaults.
Arp.Io.PnC.SetInterfaceAd- dress	Arp.lo.PnC	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::InterfaceAddressPayload	Interface address changed to: IP=x.x.x.x Netmask=x.x.x.x Gateway=x.x.x.x IsVola- tile={"true" "false"}
Arp.Io.PnC.SetStationName	Arp.lo.PnC	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::MessageWithStationNamePayload	The station name is set to: {StationName}
Arp.lo.PnD.ArAbort	Arp.lo.PnD	Info	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	"Connection to device established: {Sta- tionName}"
				"Connection to device with differences es- tablished: {StationName}"
Arp.Io.PnD.ArReady	Arp.lo.PnD	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::MessageWithStationNamePayload	Connection to device aborted: {station- Name}
Arp.lo.PnD.PnStationStat- eChanged	Arp.lo.PnD	Internal	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::PnStationStatePayload	Led state changed: Arp.lo.PnD (Device), BF={"On" "Off"}, SF={"On" "Off"}
Arp.lo.PnD.ResetToFacto- ryDefaults	Arp.lo.PnD	Info	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	This station is reset to factory defaults.
Arp.lo.PnD.SetInterfaceAd- dress	Arp.lo.PnD	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::InterfaceAddressPayload	Interface address changed to: IP=x.x.x.x Netmask=x.x.x.x Gateway=x.x.x.x IsVola- tile={"true" "false"}
Arp.Io.PnD.SetStationName	Arp.lo.PnD	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Io::Profinet- Stack::MessageWithStationNamePayload	
Arp.Plc.Domain.PlcMan- ager.StateChanged	PLC	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Plc::PlcStat- eChangedPayload	Plc state changed: {"None" "Ready" "Stop" "Run- ning" "Halt" "Changing", "Warning" "Er- ror" "SuspendedBySwitch" "DcgNotPossi- ble" "DcgRealTimeViolation"} ==> {"None" "Ready" "Stop" "Run- ning" "Halt" "Changing", "Warning" "Er- ror" "SuspendedBySwitch" "DcgNotPossi- ble" "DcgRealTimeViolation"}
Arp.Plc.Esm.Excep- tion.Arp.Plc.Esm	Arp.Plc.Esm	Error	Arp::System::NmPayload::Plc::Exception- InformationPayload Exception- InformationPayload Exception- InformationPayload Information+ Name={} information={} ext tion={}	
Arp.Service.NotificationLog- ger.ClosingArchive	NotificationLogger	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::NotificationLog- ger::MessageWithArchiveNamePayload This entry is made during of firmware. For the time bein is always "Default". Might r during voltage drops (depe- vice).	
Arp.Ser- vices.Alarms.Log.Acknowl- edgeRequest.eUAServer	eUAServer	Internal	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	See alarms

Table 2-6 Notifications triggered by the firmware

NotificationName	SenderName	Severity	PayloadTypeName	PayloadString
Arp.Ser- vices.Alarms.Log.AddA- larm.eUAServer	eUAServer	Internal	Arp::System::NmPayload::Alarms::Inter- nal::AlarmPayload	See alarms
Arp.Ser- vices.Alarms.Log.Confirm- Request.eUAServer	eUAServer	Internal	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	See alarms
Arp.Ser- vices.Alarms.Log.New- State.eUAServer	eUAServer	Internal	Arp::System::NmPayload::Alarms::Inter- nal::AlarmPayload	See alarms
Arp.System.Acf.System- Manager.Startup	SystemManager	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Acf::System- StartupPayload	System starting up. Firmware version {"2019.0 LTS"}
Arp.System.Acf.System- Manager.StateChanged	SystemManager	Info	Arp::System::NmPayload::Acf::System- ManagerStatePayload	SystemManager state changed: {"None"I"Ready"I"Stop"I"Running"}, er- ror={"true"I"false"}, warning={"true"I"false"}
Arp.System.Nm.Exception- DuringNotify.LocalloProcess	NotificationMan- ager	Error	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	Only if controller has local I/Os (e.g., AXC F 2152)
				Caught an exception during dispatching notification '{notificationName}': {Exception Message incl. Call-Stack}
Arp.System.Nm.Exception- DuringNotify.MainProcess	NotificationMan- ager	Error	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	Caught an exception during dispatching notification '{notificationName}': {Exception Message incl. Call-Stack}
Arp.System.Nm.Exception- DuringNotify.ProfinetPro- cess	NotificationMan- ager	Error	Arp::System::Nm::StringPayload	Caught an exception during dispatching notification '{notificationName}': {Exception Message incl. Call-Stack}
Arp.System.Nm.Subscri- beToNotRegisteredNotifica- tion	NotificationMan- ager	Warning	Arp::System::Nm:NmSubscribeFailed- Payload <arp::system::nm::nmsubscri- beToNotRegisteredPayload></arp::system::nm::nmsubscri- 	A subscriber subscribed to not registered notification name: {notificationName}
Arp.System.Nm.Subscribe- ToUnregisteredNotification	NotificationMan- ager	Error	Arp::System::Nm::NmSubscribeFailed- Payload <arp::system::nm::nmsubscribe- ToUnregisteredPayload></arp::system::nm::nmsubscribe- 	A subscriber subscribed to unregistered notification name: {notificationName}

Table 2-6 Notifications triggered by the firmware

2.13 Notification logger

The Notification logger enables the saving of notifications in a database. The saved notifications can be displayed and evaluated using external tools. The Notification logger registers with the Notification manager for all configured notifications and thus receives all applicable messages that are sent. The Notification logger can be used for analyzing firmware and applications.

The PLCnext Technology SDK contains helpful classes for the Notification logger. If you want to use a class, integrate it into your program via an **#include** command, (e.g., **#include** Arp/Services/NotificationLogger/Services/INotificationLoggerSe rvice.hpp). Further information on the classes and their applications is available directly in the code commentary.

2.13.1 Displaying notifications in the PLCnext Engineer cockpit

The notifications of a controller are displayed in PLCnext Engineer in the "Cockpit" editor of your controller.

- In the "PLANT" area, click on the controller (e.g., AXC F 2152).
- Select the "Cockpit" editor.
- Select "Notifications".

For more detailed information, please refer to the online help for PLCnext Engineer.

2.13.2 Receiving notifications

An archive subscribes to all notifications to be received. Additionally, in an archive, filters can be used for the notifications subscribed to, which refer to the metadata. This way you can select which notifications are actually saved. The notification logger contains several archives that enable notifications to be saved for different issues and purposes.

2.13.3 Configuring the notification logger

If necessary, you can configure the Notification logger via a config file in XML format. To modify the configuration manually, the XML file can be edited using any editor. If you do not create your own configuration, the standard settings from the settings file will be used. Changes to the configuration are automatically applied after a restart of the controller.

You will find the configuration files in the /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Services/Notification-Logger/*.config directory. The configuration files are imported during the start of the firm-ware.

A configuration file for the notification logger is structured as shown in the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<NotificationLoggerConfigurationDocument
xmlns="http://www.phoenixcontact.com/schema/notificationloggerconfiguration"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.phoenixcontact.com/schema/notificationloggerconfiguration"
schemaVersion="1.0">
<Includes>
<Include path="$ARP_PROJECTS_DIR$/Default/" />
</Includes>
```

<pre><archives></archives></pre>	
<notifications> <notification nam<br=""></notification></notifications> <exclusionfilter> <severity operato<br=""></severity></exclusionfilter> <storage le"="" path="\$ARP_F
<SizeLimitation>
<FileSizeLimitation>
<SizeLimitation></th><th>r=" threshold="Info"></storage> PROJECTS_DIR\$/Default/Services/NotificationLogger/archives"> itation MaxFileSize="64MB" /> tEntires NumberOfEntriesToDelete="16" />	
files •	nfiguration files are integrated between tags <includes> and </includes> . Use the Include path attribute to reference further files to be integrated by indicating their path. The element can occur any number of times. archive is defined between tags <archives> and </archives> . Define the archive using the following attributes:
Attribute	Description
Archive name	Name of the archive. The name is used as the basis for the file names.
Notification name	Name of the notification to be saved to the archive. This element can occur any num- ber of times.
ExclusionFilter - And - Or	 Specification of the input filter for notifications. This can refer to any part of the name-space. All subordinate notifications are recorded. All notifications matching the filter are discarded and not saved. AND-link of several filter elements. Contains any number of other filter elements. OR-link of several filter elements. Contains any number of other filter elements.
– And	 Specification of the input filter for notifications. This can refer to any part of the name-space. All subordinate notifications are recorded. All notifications matching the filter are discarded and not saved. AND-link of several filter elements. Contains any number of other filter elements.

Attribute	Description	
Storage	Specification of the persistent storage of the archive	
– path	 Path for saving the archive files 	
 SizeLimitation 	 Limitation of file size 	
 FilesizeLimitation 	 MaxFilesize attribute: Maximum storage space in bytes; positive integer re- quired, permitted suffixes: kB (*1024), MB (*1048576) 	
- SizeReduction	 Action for reducing the file size. The action is executed as soon as SizeLimita- tion is violated. 	
 DeleteOldestEntries 	 NumberOfEntriesToDelete attribute: Number of elements to be deleted, positive integer 	

2.13.4 Saving notifications

Saving the notifications

The Notification logger uses one or several archives for registering, saving and querying notifications. It provides a uniform interface to these archives and enables the configuration of the archives via the configuration files. The notifications are permanently stored in an SQLite database. This way, the file is not system-oriented and, after copying it to another system, can be opened and processed with the appropriate tools. The pre-defined database is available on the file system of your controller at /etc/plcnext/logs/default.sqlite. The archives offer functions for acquiring and filtering incoming notifications as well as for querying and deleting. Using different archives makes it possible to save notifications for different issues and purposes. For example:

- Firmware diagnostics
 Short-term saving of firmware events for diagnostics by the service.
 - Network diagnostics Saving of diagnostic messages from network components over a short period for diagnosing disconnections or sporadic delays.
- Application diagnostics
 Saving notifications of the application program, e.g., malfunctions of machines, refilling of consumables, error messages by integrated aggregates.

2.13.5 Querying notifications

Saved notifications can be queried via RSC interfaces. You can use filter criteria for the query in order to specify the query. You can query all archives or the notifications of one specific archive. To do so, use the Arp/Services/NotificationLogger/Services/INotificationLogger/Service.hpp interface. Further information on the classes and their applications is available directly in the code commentary.

Use the **QueryStoredNotifications** method to query saved notifications. You can limit the query using the following parameters:

Table 2-7 Parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
archives	String[]	List of names of archives to be queried. If this list is empty, all archives with sufficient access rights are queried.
filter	NotificationFilter	Specification of the filter for the query

Table 2-7 Parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
limit	int32	Maximum number of notifications to be returned
sortOrder	SortOrder	Sorting criterion of the query
language	String	Desired language of user data (de, en_GB, etc.). Currently not supported.

If using RSC, the filters are described by a structure with reference values or regular expressions. The limits are part of the specified area. The individual criteria are ANDed.

Table 2-8 INotificationLoggerService - Struct: NotificationFilter

Field	Data type	Description
StoredIdLowerLimit	uint64	Lower limit of the StoredId (>=1), is ignored if = 0 In the notification logger, a notification is clearly identified by a Store- dId (uint64). The StoredId is assigned by the notification logger when adding the notification to the input buffer.
StoredIdUpperLimit	uint64	Upper limit of the StoredId (>=1, <=18446744073709551615, max. uint64), is ignored if = 0
NotificationNameRegExp	String	Regular expression for the notification name. Is ignored if field is empty.
SenderNameRegExp	String	Regular expression for the sender name. Is ignored if field is empty.
TimestampBefore	String	Oldest applicable notification. Is ignored if field is empty. The format complies with ISO 8601 plus indication of microseconds. YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.SSSSS
TimestampAfter	String	Latest applicable notification. Is ignored if field is empty. The format complies with ISO 8601 plus indication of microseconds. YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.SSSSS
SeverityLowerLimit	String	Lowest applicable severity. Is ignored if field is empty.
SeverityUpperLimit	String	Highest applicable severity. Is ignored if field is empty.

The values are returned via the **StoredNotification** struct object. The object includes the following fields:

Field	Data type	Description
Id	uint64	ID of saved notifications
Archives	String	Name of the archive the notification was loaded from. If the notification is present in several archives, this field contains a list of archives separated by commas.
NotificationName	String	Name of the notification
SenderName	String	Name of the sender
TimeStamp	String	Time stamp of when the notification was sent. The format complies with ISO 8601 plus additional indication of microseconds. YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss.SSSSSS
Severity	String	Severity of the notification
Payload	String[]	Translated and formatted representation of user data
PayloadXml	String[]	User data as XML

2.13.6 Permissions

Table 2-9 shows which user role is authorized to what extent to call the methods of the INotificationLoggerService. User roles not contained in this table do not have access permission. For additional information on user roles, please refer to Section 3.9.1 on page 82.

- x = Authorization available
- = No autorization

Table 2-9 Authorizations for calling of methods of the INotificationLoggerService

Role	QueryStoredNotifications	DeleteNotifications	ListArchives	Other
	QueryNotifications			
Admin	x	x	x	x
Engineer	x	x	x	-
Commissioner	x	-	x	-
Service	x	-	x	-
DataViewer	x	-	x	-
DataChanger	x	-	x	-
Viewer	x	-	x	-

2.14 Operating system

The PLCnext Technology control platform is based on a Linux operating system with realtime patch. Linux is a highly reliable open source operating system suitable for applications that require a high stability. A wide range of open source software is available for the Linux operating system, which is supported by a large community of users and developers. You can also use this open software, software blocks, and technologies for your PLC application (e.g., SQL server). PLCnext Technology uses the Linux operating system and extends it by the functions of a PLC such as the cyclic processing of tasks and cycle-consistent data exchange. Core changes or extensions are not possible. To add functions to the system, the user must compile and, if necessary, execute installations with "root" rights.

The operating system features the following components and services:

- Firewall (nftables is used for the firewall. The firewall can be configured via WBM, see Section 3.9.3 on page 95.)
- OpenVPN
- strongSwan
- SSH/SFTP
- NTP
- DNS

2.14.1 Directories of the firmware components in the file system

PLCnext Controllers work with a Linux operating system. You can access the controller via SFTP or via SSH, view the directories and files in the file system (on the internal parameterization memory and on the SD card), and modify them if necessary.

	Directories and files that are provided by Phoenix Contact (also through firmware updates) are stored on the internal parameterization memory of the controller.
	If you make changes to the directories or files, the Linux operating system generates an overlay filesystem. The directory structure depends on whether you operate the controller with or without an SD card:
Operation without an SD card	If you make changes to the directories or files on the internal parameterization memory, the Linux operating system generates an overlay file system here.
	Some controllers have to be operated with an SD card.
	Check this in the user manual of our controller.
Operation with an SD card	If you operate the controller with an SD card, the overlay file system is generated on the SD card.
	Settings that you have configured yourself (e.g., network configuration, project bus config- uration, PLCnext Engineer project, etc.) are also saved to the SD card.

 Table 2-10
 Directory structure on the internal parameterization memory and the SD card

Directory in the root file system	Content
/usr/local/lib	Directory for storing additional open source librar- ies that are used by customized C++ programs.
	For additional information on programming the controller with C++, please refer to <u>Section 6,</u> <u>"Creating programs with C++"</u> .
/usr/share/common-licenses	License information on the individual Linux packages of the controller
/opt/plcnext	Home directory of the "admin" Linux user and working directory of the device firmware
	Files written by the application program are stored in this directory if the specified file name does not contain a memory path.
/opt/plcnext/logs	Directory for storing the log files of the diagnostic logger as well as the database of the notification logger
	Here, you will find the Output.log file. It contains information on the startup behavior of the firm- ware, status and error messages as well as warn- ing notes that help you find the source of error.
/opt/plcnext/projects	Directory for storing project folders and files
/opt/plcnext/projects/PCWE	Directory for storing PLCnext Engineer projects
	All files and subdirectories in this directory are managed exclusively by PLCnext Engineer.Do not make any changes to this directory.
/opt/plcnext/Security	Directory for storing certificates (IdentityStores and TrustStores)
/opt/plcnext/Security/Certificates/ https	Directory for storing HTTPS certificates

Directory in the root file system	Content
/opt/plcnext/apps	All active apps are mounted to this directory.
	The directory is part of the PLCnext Store.
/opt/plcnext/installed_apps	Directory for storing all installed app containers.
	The directory is part of the PLCnext Store.
/opt/plcnext/lttng	Directory for storing the default configuration files for tracing via LTTng
/opt/plcnext/backup	Directory for download change processes
	The directory is used to create a backup of the project folder. In case of an error, the content of the backup folder is restored.
/opt/plcnext/retaining	Directory for storing remanent data
/opt/plcnext/shadowing	Directory for the internal storage of copies of C++ user libraries that were configured and down- loaded in PLCnext Engineer.
/opt/plcnext/profinet	Directory for storing temporary PROFINET files

Table 2-10	Directory structure on the internal parameterization memory and the SD
	card

Using SFTP to access the file system is accessed via the SFTP protocol. SFTP client software is required for this (e.g., WinSCP).

Access to the file system via SFTP requires authentication with a user name and password. The following access data is set by default with administrator rights:

User name: admin Password: printed on the controller

2.14.2 System time

•

2.14.2.1 NTP (Network Time Protocol)

ServerAn ntpd (Network Time Protocol daemon) is included in the operating system for time syn-
chronization. It is possible to connect to other NTP servers or to start your own server.

The NTP service from ntp.org (Network Time Protocol Project) is integrated into the operating system. This service can be configured via the /etc/ntp.conf configuration file. As an admin user, you have sufficient rights to modify the data. The changes are adopted after restarting the ntp daemon.

Execute the sudo /etc/init.d/ntpd script.

The changes made in the configuration file will be active after the next controller restart.

In the standard configuration, the operating system time is synchronized with the Real-Time Clock (RTC) installed in the hardware. You have the option of specifying IP addresses and names in the configuration.

 Additional
 You will find a general introduction to the Network Time Protocol daemon (ntpd) at_

 information
 https://www.eecis.udel.edu/~mills/ntp/html/ntpd.html.

Client

	 You will find a detailed description of the configuration options at https://www.eecis.udel.edu/~mills/ntp/html/confopt.html.
	2.14.2.2 Changing the system time via the shell
	As an alternative to synchronization with an NTP server, you can also change the system time manually via the shell. Authentication with the user name and password is necessary for SSH access to the shell. The following access data is set by default with administrator rights:
	User name: admin Password: printed on the controller.
Requesting the system	Open the shell.
time	Request the system time via the date command.
Setting the system time	 Enter shell command sudo date -s "YYYY-MM-DD hh:mm:ss". YYYY: Year MM: Month TT: Day hh: Hours mm: Minutes ss: Seconds
	2.14.2.3 Setting the system time in PLCnext Engineer
	 You can also set the system time using the PLCnext Engineer software. Access via PLCnext Engineer requires authentication with the user name and password. In the "PLANT" area, click on "PLCnext". Select the "Online Parameters" editor. Enter the desired values for the date and time in the corresponding input fields.
ANLAGE	(;) PLCnext ×
 Projekt (1) axc2152-1 : AXC F 2152 (6) 	Tasks und Events 🖹 Datenliste 🔅 Online-Parameter
 > (;) PLCnext (2) 	Online-Parameter
OPC UA	Identität Echtzeituhr

Figure 2-34 Setting the system time in PLCnext Engineer

Datum: (i)

Uhrzeit: (i)

2.14.3 OpenVPN™ client

LAN

Echtzeituhr

With the OpenVPN[™] software, you have the option of establishing a virtual private network (VPN) and therefore a secure connection via an unsecure network. The data is encrypted using suitable protocols.

A description on how to set up a VPN tunnel using openVPN™ is available in the PLCnext Community at plcnext-community.net.

Axioline F (1)

2.14.4 IPsec (strongSwan)

IPsec is an encryption and authentication protocol with which VPN connections (Virtual Private Networks) can be established. StrongSwan is an implementation of the IKE (Internet Key Exchange) protocol and can be used for VPN connections via IPsec.

For details, please refer to <u>http://www.strongswan.org</u>.

AXC F 2152 configurationYou can edit the /etc/ipsec.conf configuration file with admin user rights.notesUse the following commands to start, stop and restart the daemon:

- Start: sudo ipsec start
- Stop: sudo ipsec stop
- Restart: sudo ipsec restart
- Use the following command to call the status: sudo ipsec status

Configuration example are available at https://wiki.strongswan.org.

Configuration examples

2.14.5 Text editors

•

"Nano" and "Vim" are installed on the controller as text editors. When you are connected to the controller via the SSH console, you can call the desired editor via the command line.

• To open a file with the desired editor, enter nano <file name> or vim <file name>.

Nano

Vim

The "Nano" text editor is easy to use and is therefore recommended for inexperienced users.

The "Vim" text editor has an extended range of functions and is a popular editor in the Linux environment.

2.14.6 User rights

When a PLCnext user logs into the SSH console with the "admin" user role, the user is also recognized with the same name and password by the Linux system. The user is therefore assigned to the "plcnext" Linux group. Files that this user may read, write and/or execute are assigned to the "plcnext" group in the file system. In addition to the Linux user rights, the PLCnext Technology firmware also has its own user management of which the configuration is described in Section ""User Authentication" page" on page 82.

Executing Linux commands that require higher rights is made possible for the users via **sudo**. Which Linux commands the PLCnext users are allowed to execute via **sudo** is configured in the Linux system.

The following rights are available:

Table 2-11 User rights

Rights	"plcnext" group	admin	sudo required
Setting and inspecting IP settings (including ifconfig, ping, netstat, etc.)	x	x	x (ifconfig)
Configuring the firewall	x	x	
Starting/stopping the firewall (init script)	x	x	x
Inspecting the firewall with nft	x	x	x

Table 2-11 User rights

Rights	"plcnext" group	admin	sudo required
Configuring VPN (IPsec and OpenVPN™)		x	
Starting/stopping VPN services (IPsec and Open- VPN™)		x	x
Editing the "Default" PLCnext folder for individual ACF, ESM, GDS configurations, and *.so	x	x	
Starting/stopping the PLCnext Technology firmware processes sudo /etc/init.d/plcnext start stop restart		x	x
Reading PLCnext log files	x	x	
Calling and configuring TOP/HTOP	x	x	
Firmware update via RAUC		x	
Firmware update via update script sudo update-plcnext		x	x
Configuring the NTP server	x	x	
Setting the root password with passwd		x	
Requesting the system time with date	x	x	
Setting the system time with sudo date -s	x	x	x
Restarting/shutting down the controller with reboot or shutdown		x	x
Write access to /opt/plcnext and /opt/plcnext/projects	x	x	
Recording network traces with tcpdump	x	x	x
Starting the gdbserver with root rights (see also PLCnext Community)		x	x
Resetting to factory defaults sudo recover-plcnext 1		x	x
See also "Factory reset" on page 72			

2.14.7 Root rights

PLCnext Controllers are supplied with a preset admin user. This enables access to the most important functions. For some settings, you require advanced rights, e.g., to configure settings for remote debugging of C# code. To this end, create a user with root rights.



NOTE: Risk of damage to equipment

If safety functions are switched off, the controller must not be used for live operation.
Ensure that there is no risk of damage to the equipment or personal injury.

NOTE: Changes to the firmware

As a "root" user, you have the right to make any change on the controller. Root rights are therefore only suitable for qualified application programmers and software engineers with relevant experience.

Make sure you do not make changes to the PLCnext Technology firmware.

Creating a root user

- Configure the connection settings in WinSCP.
- Connect to the controller by entering the IP address of the controller and the password for the admin user.
- Click "Login".

.

Login		- 🗆 X
New Site admin@192.168.1.10 root@192.168.1.10	Session Elle protocol: SFTP Host name: 192.168.1.10 User name: admin Edit	Port number: 22 Advanced
Tools Manage	Login 🔽 Close	Help

Figure 2-35 Connecting WinSCP to the controller (1)



• Subsequently, open the console by clicking the "Open in PuTTY" button.

🌆 projects - admin@192.168.1.10 - WinSCP	_
Local Mark Files Commands Session Options Remote Help	
🕀 🔀 📚 Synchronize 🛛 😰 🕼 🍘 Queue 🗸 🛛 Transfer Settings Default	- 🔊 -
📮 admin@192.168.1.10 💣 New Session	
Figure 2-37 Opening PuTTY	

• Log in with the "admin" user name and the controller password. The default password of the controller is printed on the housing.

P admin@192.168.1.10	_	×
Using username "admin". admin@192.168.1.10's password: axcf2152:~\$		^

Figure 2-38 Logging in as admin user

- Enter the sudo passwd root command.
- Enter the admin password.
- Enter a new password for the root user.
- Confirm the new password by entering it again.

🛃 admin@192.168.1.10	_	×
Using username "admin".		~
admin@192.168.1.10's password:		
admin@axcf2152:~\$ sudo passwd root		
We trust you have received the usual lecture from the local System	m	
Administrator. It usually boils down to these three things:		
#1) Respect the privacy of others.		
#2) Think before you type.		
#3) With great power comes great responsibility.		
Password:		
Changing password for root		
Enter the new password (minimum of 5 characters)		
Please use a combination of upper and lower case letters and numbe	ers.	
New password:		
Re-enter new password:		
passwd: password changed.		
admin@axcf2152:~\$		

Figure 2-39 Creating a new root user

To end the connection, enter the **exit** command.

SSH login as root The SSH login as root user is prevented for security reasons. To enable direct login via SSH for the root user, you have to configure this option in the sshd_config file.

- Open the /etc/ssh/sshd_config file using a suitable editor.
- Under # Authentication:, enable the commented out PermitRootLogin yes entry.
- Restart the SSH service with /etc/init.d/sshd restart.

2.14.8 Linux scripts of the PLCnext Technology firmware

Firmware update

As of firmware version 2019.0 LTS, you can update the firmware conveniently via webbased management of your controller. For older firmware versions, you can start the firmware update via the **sudo update-plcnext** shell script, which you will find in the file system of the controller.

- Download the *.zip firmware file from the download area of your controller.
- Unpack the *.zip firmware file.
- Run the *.exe setup file.
- Follow the instructions of the installation wizard.
- Open your SFTP client software (e.g., WinSCP).
- Log in as an administrator.

The following access data is set by default:

User name: admin

Password: printed on the controller

- Copy the *.raucb update file to the /opt/plcnext directory (home directory of the "admin" Linux user).
- Open the shell using a command line tool (e.g., PuTTY or Tera Term).
- Log in as an administrator.

Factory reset

The name of the update script is the same for every controller: **sudo update-plcnext**. The script is available in the file directory under /usr/sbin/. Under /usr/sbin/, you will also find symbolic links with the respective product designation in the name, e.g., **sudo update-axcf2152**.

The script executes the following operations:

- 1. Stopping the PLCnext Technology process.
- 2. Performing the firmware update.
- 3. Rebooting the system and deleting the firmware container.

You can reset the controller to the default settings using a shell script. Here, a distinction is made between two types of default settings:

- Type 1: All user-specific data is deleted (settings, programs, users, etc.). The current PLCnext Technology firmware remains unchanged.
- Type 2: In addition to the user-specific data (type 1), the firmware of the controller is reset to default state.

The script is available in the controller file system. The name of the factory reset script is the same for every controller: **sudo recover-plcnext**. You will find the script under **/usr/sbin/**. Under **/usr/sbin/**, you will also find symbolic links with the respective product designation in the name, e.g., **recover-axcf2152** 1 for type 1 default settings.

1

You can also reset your controller to type 1 and type 2 default settings via the device-specific operating elements (e.g., reset button or operating display). For additional information, refer to the corresponding user manual.

The type 1 default settings can be restored via the "Cockpit" editor in PLCnext Engineer.
3 Web-based management (WBM)

Each PLCnext Technology controller features a web-based management (WBM). In the WBM, you can access static and dynamic controller information and modify certain controller settings. You can call up WBM via every Ethernet interface of the controller.

The WBM systems of controllers with PLCnext Technology all have the same structure and are described generally in the following.

3.1 Establishing a connection to WBM

To establish a connection to WBM, proceed as follows:

- Open the web browser on your PC.
- In the address field, enter the URL "https://IP address of the controller" (example: "https://192.168.1.10").



Please note:

WBM can only be called if the controller has a valid IP address. Upon delivery, the controller has IP address 192.168.1.10 (Ethernet interface LAN1 in case of several Ethernet interfaces).



If there is a PLCnext Engineer HMI application on the controller, entering URL "https://IP address of the controller" calls the PLCnext Engineer application.

To call WBM, enter URL "https://IP address of the controller/wbm" in this case.

Initial access: TLS certificate



For secure communication, the web server of the controller uses a self-signed TLS certificate automatically generated by the controller. Before the web server of the controller can be accessed, you must authorize the TLS certificate in your web browser.

Please note:

- The controller generates the TLS certificate during the boot phase.
- The certificate uses the IP address of the Ethernet interface with PROFINET controller function.
- The certificate is used for all Ethernet interfaces of the controller.
- Each IP address of the controller must be authorized in the web browser before a PLCnext Engineer HMI application can be accessed via this address and therefore via the corresponding Ethernet interface.
- If the controller is reset to the default settings, the certificate is generated again.
- The certificate and a corresponding private key are available in the following directories of the controller file system:
 - /opt/plcnext/Security/Certificates/https/https_cert.pem
 - /opt/plcnext/Security/Certificates/https/https_key.pem

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

Initial access: Welcome page The PLCnext Technology controller welcome page is shown when the controller web server is accessed for the first time.



Easy configuration ck here for the web-based management of the PLCnext Control AXC F 2152

next Technology on the Web

Do not show this page in the future and go directly to the WBM

Figure 3-1 WBM: Welcome page of the PLCnext Technology controller

The welcome page contains links to the following web content:

- WBM of the controller
- PLCnext Community
- PLCnext website _



If you do not want the welcome page to be displayed each time the controller web server is accessed:

Enable the "Do not show this page in the future and go directly to the WBM" check • box.

The next time you access the controller web server, the login page of the WBM opens, see Section 3.4.

Alternatively, you can enter URL "https://IP address of the controller/wbm" (example: "https://192.168.1.10/wbm") in your browser address field. In this case, WBM is displayed immediately.

The welcome page remains accessible via URL "https://IP address of the controller/welcome".

3.2 Licensing information on open source software

PLCnext Technology controllers work with a Linux operating system.

All license information can be called via the "Legal Information" link on every page of WBM:
Click on the "Legal Information" link on the bottom left of the WBM page.

Licenses for all of the open source software used are shown.

3.3 Changing the language

You can change the language for the WBM user interface in the top left of the web browser window.



Figure 3-2 WBM: Changing the language

• Click on the "Deutsch" or "English" link to change the language.

WBM then immediately switches to the desired language.

3.4 Login

The WBM login page opens when

- You access WBM for the first time.
- You have enabled the WBM User Authentication function, see Section 3.9.1.

If you disable user authentication, logging in is not necessary to access WBM. In this case, the start page of WBM opens when WBM is accessed, see Section 3.5.



Diasca	login	with	vour	username	and	naceword
riedse	login	WILLI	your	username	anu	passworu.

Username	Enter Username
Password	Enter Password
	Login

Figure 3-3 WBM: Login page

Initial access as an admin-		When you access WBM for the first time, log in as the administrator.				
istrator		Enter the user name "admin" in the "Username" input field.				
	•	Enter the administrator password in the "Password" input field.				

- The administrator password is printed on the controller. For more detailed information, please refer to the user manual for your controller.
- To open WBM, click on the "Login" button.

The WBM start page opens (see Section 3.5).



Recommended:

- Only use the administrator password for the initial login.
- Once you have logged in successfully, change the administrator password to prevent unauthorized administrator access (see Section 3.9.1).



Please note:

After changing the access data for the administrator, it is no longer possible to log in with the user name "admin" and the administrator password printed on the controller.

Logging in as a user

If WBM user authentication is enabled, log in using your user details.

- Enter your user name in the "Username" input field.
- Enter your password in the "Password" input field.
- To open WBM, click on the "Login" button.

The WBM start page opens (see Section 3.5).

3.5 Start page – areas and functions



The WBM is split into the following areas:

- Information: General device information
- Diagnostics: PROFINET
- Configuration: PROFICLOUD
- Security: User authentication, certificate authentication and firewall
- Management: Firmware update of the non-safety-related device firmware

3.6 "Information" area

3.6.1 "General Data" page

On the "General Data" page, you will find general details on the device, e.g., hardware and firmware versions, the order number, as well as manufacturer details.

RFC 4072S 1051328	Information General Data		
NET 0	General Data		
	Vendor	Phoenix Contact GmbH & Co. KG	
11 m (b)	Address	Flachsmarktstr. 8, 32825 Blomberg, Germany	
	Internet	http://www.phoenixcontact.com	
Information	Туре	RFC 4072S	
neral Data	Order No.	1051328	
	Serial No.	2034059038	
Diagnostics	Firmware Version	2019.0 LTS (19.0.0.16316 branches/release/19.0.0/ beta)	
	Hardware Version	01	
Configuration	FPGA Version	0.1.15	
Security			

3.7 "Diagnostics" area

3.7.1 "PROFINET" page

On the "PROFINET" page, you can view information on the controller and the connected PROFINET devices.

"Overview" tab On the "Overview" tab, you will find information on the current PROFINET function of the controller and its IP settings.

			HW: 02 FW: 2019.0 LT MAC: 00:A0:45:13:B5
AXC F 2152 2404267	Diagnostics PROFINET		
	Overview Device List		
	Profinet Controller		
Information	Status		
eneral Data	Profinet Controller function	Activated	
Diagnostics	Profinet Device function	Activated	
rofinet	Controller details		
	Device Name	AXC F 2152	
 Configuration 	IP Address	192.168.1.10	
roficloud	Subnet Mask	255.255.255.0	
	Default Gateway	0.0.0.0	
Security	Realtime Class	RT *	
Iser Authentication			
Certificate Authentication			
irewall			
- Administration			
rmware Update			

"Status" areaIn the "Status" area, you can see if the controller is currently used as PROFINET controller
and/or as PROFINET device."Controller details" areaIn the "Controller details" area, the current IP settings of the controller are displayed.
Diagnostic information on the connected PROFINET devices are available on the "Device
List" tab.

WBM: "PROFINET" page, "Overview" tab

Figure 3-6

"Device list" tab The "Device List" tab provides an overview of the configured PROFINET devices. The overview contains the device names of the PROFINET devices, the current IP settings, the activation status (TRUE = active, FALSE = inactive) as well as the diagnostic state and code.

Table 3-1 PROFINET diagnostics: possible dia	gnostic states
--	----------------

Diagnostic state	Description
ОК	No error
Warning	A warning occurred, e.g., "Maintenance Required", "Maintenance Demanded", and "Diagnosis available"
Error	A PROFINET bus error occurred.

utsch English						
						HW: 02 FW: 2019.0 MAC: 00:A0:45:13:
AXC F 2152 2404267	Diagnostics					
	Overview Device List					
	Profinet Device List					
- Information	No. Device Name	IP Address	Active	Diagnostics	Details	
General Data	1 AXL-F-BK-PN-1*	192.168.1.11	TRUE	0×0000	E	
 Diagnostics 					Les	
Profinet		ch own Web Based Management		OK Warning		
 Configuration 	(Reachable via the link)			Error		
Proficloud	Diagnostics: Online	Status: OK				
- Security						
User Authentication						
Certificate Authentication						
Firewall						
 Administration 						
Firmware Update						

	Figure 3-7 WBM: "PROFINET" page, "Device List" tab
Opening WBM of a PROFINET device	 Some PROFINET devices feature their own web-based management (WBM). You can open WBM of a connected PROFINET device via a link to the "Device List" tab. In the column "Device Name", click on the PROFINET device whose WBM you want to open.
	The WBM of the PROFINET device is opened in the web browser in a new tab.
Opening the "Device Infor- mation" view	 In the "Device Information" view, you will find certain general information, the current IP settings as well as diagnostic information for each connected PROFINET device. In the "Details" column, click on the button.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

vice Informatio	n	D	evice Information	ı
inet Device		P	rofinet Device	
tivation Status	TRUE	A	ctivation Status	TRUE
e Number	1	D	evice Number	1
ID	00B0hex	V	endor ID	00B0hex
ID	1000 _{hex}	D	evice ID	1000 _{hex}
et		E	thernet	
ress	192.168.1.11	IF	P Address	192.168.1.11
Mask	255.255.255.0	S	ubnet Mask	255.255.255.0
Gateway	192.168.1.11	D	efault Gateway	192.168.1.11
of Station	axl-f-bk-pn-1	N	ame of Station	axl-f-bk-pn-1
tname	axl-f-bk-pn-1	D	NS Hostname	axl-f-bk-pn-1
eral Errors		P	eripheral Errors	
IS	ок	S	tatus	Error
nostics Status: Code	0×0000	D	iagnostics Status: Code	0x0003
nostics Status: Text		D	iagnostics Status: Text	Lost connection to Device
	Close			Close

The "Device Information" view opens (see Figure 3-8).



Update frequency for diagnostic data

Diagnostic data is updated with an update frequency of 1/s. The following information is updated:

- Device list: The device list can be recomposed, e.g., after changing and updating the PLCnext Engineer project.
- Diagnostic data:
 - Change of connection status of the PROFINET devices.
 - Diagnostic state of the PROFINET devices.

For additional information on the diagnostic code, please refer to the Appendix A 4 on page 200.

3.8 "Configuration" area

3.8.1 "PROFICLOUD" page

The "PROFICLOUD" page provides status information on the connection of the controller to PROFICLOUD.

You can also specify if you want to operate the controller with or without a PROFICLOUD connection and which PROFICLOUD services you want to use.

Deutsch English					Logout
					HW: 02 FW: 2019.0 LTS MAC: 00:A0:45:13:B5:B2
AXC F 2152 2404267	Configura	tion			
	State				
				28569b90-dead-code-a531-2e082486c57c	
					i possible.
Information					
+ Diagnostics	Information Proficioud Service State Proficioud Connection State Device Registration State Device Registr				
Configuration		ud Service 🖂			
Proficloud	Enable Time	-Series Data (TSD) Service 🗌]		
+ Security				Apply	
+ Administration					
© 2017 PHOENIX CONTACT Legal Inform	nation	Figure 3-9	WBM: "PRO	FICLOUD" page	
Activating the PROFICLOUD con	nnection	the Proficious the controller Enable the Click on The PROFIC When the PR use. To protect the	d service of the tries to establis he "Enable Prof the "Apply" butt LOUD connecti toFICLOUD cor e Proficloud cor	on of the controller is enabled. nection is enabled, you can spec nfiguration against unauthorized a	e of the controller is enabled,). cify which service you want to
				access" on page 101.	

Enabling the TSD service • To transmit process data from a PLCnext Engineer project to the TSD PROFICLOUD service, enable the "Enable Time-Series Data (TSD) Service" check box.

Enabling the PLCnextTo download apps from the PLCnext Store to the controller, the PLCnext Store service must
be enabled on the device.

• To enable the PLCnext Store service on the device, enable the "Enable PLCnext Store Service" check box.

Disabling the PROFICLOUD connection

If you want to operate the controller without a PROFICLOUD connection, you have to disable the Proficloud service of the controller. In this case, establishing a connection between the controller and PROFICLOUD is not possible due to technical reasons.

- Disable the "Enable Proficloud Service" check box.
- Click on the "Apply" button.

The PROFICLOUD connection of the controller is disabled.

3.9 "Security" area

In the "Security" area, the security-relevant settings for the controller are configured.

sch English				Lo
				HW: 01 FW: 2019.0 LTS MAC: 00:A0:45:F1:73:F2
RFC 4072S 1051328	Security User Authentication			
IEI 0	User Authentication 🗹 Enable	:/Disable		
	User	Roles		
	admin	Admin	Set Password Modify Roles Remove User	
 Information 	Tester	Engineer	Set Password Modify Roles Remove User	
 Diagnostics 	Add User			
Configuration				
Security				
ser Authentication				
ertificate Authentication				
rewall				
Administration				
7 PHOENIX CONTACT Legal Infor	mation			

3.9.1 "User Authentication" page

Figure 3-10 WBM: "User Authentication" page

User authentication

Enable or disable user authentication on the "User Authentication" page. When user authentication is enabled, authentication with a user name and password is required for access to certain components of the controller and certain functions in PLCnext Engineer. When user authentication is disabled, authentication is not necessary to access WBM, the OPC UA server of the controller, or to access the controller using PLCnext Engineer. Access to the file system via SFTP and access to the shell via SSH requires authentication (with administrator rights) even if user authentication is disabled.

User authentication is enabled by default. Upon delivery, the "admin" user is already created with administrator rights.



• On the "User Authentication" page, click on the "Add User" button.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

The "Add User" dialog opens.

Add User		
	Username	Enter Username
	Password	Enter Password
	Confirm Password	Enter Password again
	Add	Cancel

Figure 3-12 WBM: "User Authentication" page, "Add User" dialog

- Enter the user name and password into the respective input field.
- To add the user in the user manager, click on the "Add" button.

Setting a password

Proceed as follows to change a user password:

• On the "User Authentication" page, click on the "Set Password" button in the line for the desired user.

The "Set User Password" dialog opens.

Set User Password	
Username	admin
New Password	Enter Password
Confirm Password	Enter Password again
Save	Cancel



- Enter the new password into the "New Password" and "Confirm Password" input fields.
- To save the new password, click on the "Save" button.

Modifying user roles

You can select one or more user roles containing different permissions for each user. These permissions control access to

- The controller SD card
- The controller using PLCnext Engineer
- The PLCnext Engineer HMI
- WBM
- The OPC UA server of the controller

To assign one or more user role(s) to a user, proceed as follows:

• On the "User Authentication" page, click on the "Modify Roles" button in the line for the desired user (see Figure 3-10 on page 82).

The "Modify Roles" dialog opens.

Modify Roles	
Username	admin
Roles	Admin 🗹
	CertificateManager 🗌
	UserManager 🗌
	Engineer
	Commissioner
	Service
	DataViewer
	DataChanger 🗌
	Viewer
	EHmiLevel1
	EHmiLevel2
	EHmiLevel3
	EHmiLevel4 🗌
	EHmiLevel5
	EHmiLevel6
	EHmiLevel7
	EHmiLevel8
	EHmiLevel10
	FileReader 🗌 FileWriter 🗌
	Save Cancel

Figure 3-14 WBM: "User Authentication" page, "Modify Roles" dialog

• Enable the check box of the user role(s) that you would like to assign to the user.



You can manage access permission to the PLCnext Engineer HMI application via the HmiLevel1...10, EHmiViewer and EHmiChanger user roles. The assigned user roles specify if and to what extend a user can read and write from/to the HMI application. For detailed information on the security functions in a PLCnext Engineer HMI application as well as on handling HMI user roles, please refer to the PLCnext Engineer online help.

Click on the "Save" button to save the selected user role(s) for the user.

Table 3-2 shows the possible user roles and access permission.

- x = Access permission available
- = No access permission

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

							Į	Jse	r ro	le							
Application or component of the controller	Access permission		Access permission		CertificateManager	UserManager	Engineer	Commissioner	Service	DataViewer	DataChanger	Viewer	EHmiLevelX	File Reader	FileWriter	EHmiViewer	EHmiChanger
SD card/parameter- ization memory	SFTP access to the file system with an SFTP client																
	Please note: Authentication with a user name and password is always re- quired for SFTP access, even when user authentication is dis- abled.		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
Shell	SSH access to the shell Please note: Authentication with a user name and password is always re- quired for SSH access, even when user authentication is dis- abled.		-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	View values in the cockpit (e.g., utilization, etc.)	x	-	-	x	x	x	x	x	x	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Transfer a project to the controller	x	-	-	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Start (cold/warm restart) or stop the con- troller	x	-	-	x	x	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Restart (reboot) the controller	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Reset the controller to default setting type 1	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	View online variable values	x	-	-	x	-	x	x	x	x	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Overwrite variables	x	-	-	x	-	x	-	x	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer	Set and delete breakpoints	x	-	-	x	-	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
WBM	View "General Data" page	x	-	x	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
WBM	Manage users	x	-	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
WBM	Edit TrustStores and IdentityStores	x	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
WBM	Configure the firewall	х	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
WBM	Update the firmware	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-		
PLCnext Engineer HMI application	View online variable values	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x	-		

 Table 3-2
 User roles and assigned access permissions in the various applications

			_	_		_	ι	Jse	r rol	е					
Application or component of the controller	Access permission	Admin	CertificateManager	UserManager	Engineer	Commissioner	Service	DataViewer	DataChanger	Viewer	EHmiLevelX	File Reader	FileWriter	EHmiViewer	EHmiChanger
PLCnext Engineer HMI application	Overwrite variables	x	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x
OPC UA client	View online variable values	х	-	-	x	-	х	х	х	х	-	-	-	-	-
OPC UA client	Overwrite variables	х	-	-	x	-	х	-	х	-	-	-	-	-	-
OPC UA client	Read files	х	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x ¹	-	-	-
OPC UA client	Write files	х	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	x ²	-	-

Table 3-2 User roles and assigned access permissions in the various applications

FileReaders can only read files via an OPC UA client if the OPC UA file transfer is activated in PLCnext Engineer (for additional information, please refer to the PLCnext Engineer online help).

² FileWriters can only write files via an OPC UA client if the OPC UA file transfer is activated in PLCnext Engineer (for additional information, please refer to the PLCnext Engineer online help).

Removing a user

1

Proceed as follows to remove a user:

On the "User Authentication" page, click on the "Remove User" button in the line of the user to be removed.

The "Remove User" dialog opens.

•

Remove User		
Username	admin]
	Remove Cancel	

Figure 3-15 WBM: "User Authentication" page, "Remove User" dialog

• Click on the "Remove" button to delete the user.

3.9.2 "Certificate Authentication" page

The "Certificate Authentication" page is used to manage certificates for secure communication of the controller. For this, the "TrustStores" and "IdentityStores" tabs are available. On the "TrustStores" tab, you can store trusted and untrusted certificates of possible communication partners.

On the "IdentityStores" tab, you can store your own certificates.

3.9.2.1 "TrustStores" tab

On the "TrustStores" tab, you can create different TrustStores, name them and add certificates and revocation lists.

								HW: 02 F MAC: 00:	
AXC F 2152 2404267	Security Certificate Authentication								
	Trust Stores Identity St	ores							
	Trust Store	Conte	ent						
Information	Empty	Certi	icate	5:					
			No.	Туре	Subject (Common Name)	Issuer (Common Name)	Valid until	Details	
neral Data		CRL L	ists:						
Diagnostics			No.	Туре	Issuer (Common Name)	This Update	Next Update	Details	
ofinet	IPsec	Certi	icate	5:					
0 . (No.	Туре	Subject (Common Name)	Issuer (Common Name)	Valid until	Details	
Configuration			1	Trusted Certificate	VPN RootCA Gen2018	VPN RootCA Gen2018	2028-09-25T11:29:00 UTC		×
ficloud		P	2	Issuer Certificate	VPN SubCA Pyrmont Gen2018	VPN RootCA Gen2018	2026-09-25T11:35:00 UTC		×
Security			3	Issuer Certificate	VPN SubCA Lemgo Gen2018	VPN RootCA Gen2018	2026-09-25T11:35:00 UTC		×
er Authentication			4	Issuer Certificate	VPN SubCA Blomberg Gen2018	VPN RootCA Gen2018	2026-09-25T11:34:00 UTC		×
ewall									
Administration		CRL L	ists:						
mware Update			No.	Туре	Issuer (Common Name)	This Update	Next Update	Details	
			1	Trusted CRL	VPN RootCA Gen2018	2018-10-02T10:33:00 UTC	2018-11-01T10:33:00 UTC		×
			2	Issuer CRL	VPN SubCA Blomberg Gen2018	2018-10-02T10:33:00 UTC	2018-11-01T10:33:00 UTC		×
			3	Issuer CRL	VPN SubCA Lemgo Gen2018	2018-10-02T10:33:00 UTC	2018-11-01T10:33:00 UTC		×
			4	Issuer CRL	VPN SubCA Pyrmont Gen2018	2018-10-02T10:34:00 UTC	2018-11-01T10:34:00 UTC		×
		•							

Figure 3-16 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab

Adding a TrustStore	 To add a TrustStore, click on the button at the end of the TrustStore table. In the dialog that opens, enter a name in the "Name" input field. Then click on the "Add" button.
Deleting a TrustStore	 To delete a TrustStore, click on the X button to the right of the TrustStore table. In the window that opens, click on the "Remove" button.
Renaming a TrustStore	 To rename a TrustStore, click on the <i>i</i> button to the right of the TrustStore table. In the dialog that opens, enter a new name in the "Name" input field. Click on the "Rename" button.
Creating a TrustStore	 Each TrustStore is represented by two tables in WBM: "Certificates" table: In this table, you can manage trusted certificates and issuer certificates. "CRL Lists" table: In this table, you can manage the revocation lists (CRL - Certificate Revocation Lists) for the corresponding TrustStore. For this, you store untrusted certificates and issuer certificates.

Web-based management (WBM)

Adding certificates and
CRLsYou can add certificates and CRLs to a TrustStore:•To add a certificate, click on the + button below the "Certificates" table of the corre-

- sponding TrustStore. ⇒ The "Add Certificate" dialog opens (Figure 3-17).
- To add a CRL, click on the + button below the "CRL Lists" table of the corresponding TrustStore.
- \rightarrow The "Add CRL List" dialog opens (Figure 3-18).

In the "Certificates" TrustStore table, a distinction is made between the "Issuer Certificate" and "Trusted Certificate" certificate types.

• Select the desired certificate type from the "Certificate Type" drop-down list.

Possible settings:

Issuer Certificate

Trusted Certificate

Add Certificate	
Trust Store	IPsec
Certificate Type	Trusted Certificate 🔹
Certificate content in	n PEM Format:
Input Method	File Upload 🔻
Browse	
	Cancel

Figure 3-17 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, "Add Certificate" dialog, File Upload

Input method

• From the "Input Method" drop-down list, select the way a certificate or CRL is to be added to the TrustStore.

Possible settings:

- File Upload

Text Content

"File Upload":

You can upload a certificate or CRL.

- To upload a certificate in .pem format, select "File Upload".
- Click on "Browse".
- In the file explorer that opens, select the desired certificate.
- Then click on the "Add" button.
- \Rightarrow The certificate or CRL is added to the TrustStore.

Add CRL	List	
	Trust Store	IPsec
	CRL Type	Trusted CRL -
	CRL content in PEM For	mat:
	Input Method	File Upload 🔹
	Browse VPN_Sub	DCA_Pyrmont_Gen2018.pem
	Ad	d Cancel

Figure 3-18 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, "Add CRL List" dialog, File Upload

"Text Content":

- To add a certificate or CRL in text format, select "Text Content".
- Enter the text in the input field.
- Then click on the "Add" button.
- ⇒ The certificate or CRL is added to the TrustStore.

	IPsec	
Certificate Type	Trusted Certificate 🔸	
Certificate content i	n PEM Format:	
Input Method	Text Content 🗸	
BEGIN CERTIFICA	ATE	*
	gIIUDIMjRKtJtYwDQYJKoZIhvcNAQEMBQAwTzELMAkGA1UE BAoTBVB4Q1NXMRMwEQYDVQQLDApSJkQgKFRlc3QpMRswGQYD	
	dENBIEdlbjIwMTgwHhcNMTgwOTI1MTEzNDAwWhcNMjYwOTI1 cCQYDVQQGEwJERTEOMAwGA1UEChMFUHhDU1cxEzARBgNVBAsM	Ξ
MTEzNDAwWjBXMQsw ClImRCAoVGVzdCkxI MIICIjANBgkqhkiG9w(zJdWd0cKFQhLSNvGS,	rdENBIEdlbjIwMTgwHhcNMTgwOTI1MTEzNDAwWhcNMjYwOTI1 rCQYDVQQGEwJERTEOMAwGA1UEChMFUHhDU1cxEzARBgNVBAsM zAhBgNVBAMTGIZQTiBTdWJDQSBCbG9tYmVyZyBHZW4yMDE4 0BAQEFAAOCAg8AMIICCgKCAgEA453rj6fXuutqFg2O3awl /CABFDQkuc8XZq/QCDaFZdrC8QgCuaJwcCh+31b0mOhqBbk	
MTEzNDAwWjBXMQsw ClImRCAoVGVzdCkxI MIICIjANBgkqhkiG9wl zJdWd0cKFQhLSNvGS, 0Yvv13Cuvj7A/JUtjlGp 31KlBef+MFQbZq/maj	dENBIEdlbjIwMTgwHhcNMTgwOTI1MTEzNDAwWhcNMjYwOTI1 CQYDVQQGEwJERTEOMAwGA1UEChMFUHhDU1cxEzARBgNVBAsM zAhBgNVBAMTGIZQTIBTdWJDQSBCbG9tYmVyZyBHZW4yMDE4 0BAQEFAAOCAg8AMIICCgKCAgEA453rj6fXuutqFg2O3awl	
MTEZNDAWWJBXMQsw CIImRCAoVGVzdCkxI MIICIJANBgkqhkiG9wl JJdWd0cKFQhLSNvGS, 0Yvv13Cuvj7A/JUtjlGp 31KlBef+MFQbZq/maj UsseKvViryxkGP4KBD PoDPdno1M7Y/i/7uBUl 8L/hef3c2fe6FDfjmdNi	rdENBIEdlbjIwMTgwHhcNMTgwOTI1MTEzNDAwWhcNMjYwOTI1 rCQYDVQQGEwJERTEOMAwGA1UEChMFUHhDU1cxEzARBgNVBAsM zAhBgNVBANTGI2QTiBTdWJDQSBCbG9tYmVyZyBHZW4yMDE4 0BAQEFAAOCAg8AMIICCgKCAgEA453rj6fXuutqFg2O3awl /CABFDQkuc8XZq/QCDaFZdrC8QgCuaJwcCh+31b0mOhqBbk TU4IYdt2k28vyaIvkc1WAWg6F9gpVSDnU7yY2XbLicHN UKndhbjt0Yj7+pg/q++KQPJspJ+Tkg+Rt4mgnF3MsXVEKt	

Figure 3-19 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, "Add Certificate" dialog, Text Content

Deleting certificates and CRLs

٠

To delete a certificate or CRL from a TrustStore, click on the *S* button of the respective certificate or CRL.

• In the window that opens, click on the "Remove" button.

The detail views provide detailed information on every certificate and CRL:

- To open the detail view, click on the \blacksquare button of a certificate or CRL.
- ⇒ The detail view opens (see Figure 3-20 and Figure 3-21).

Serial Number	214C178B5B194034	
lssuer		
Common Name	VPN RootCA Gen2018	
RFC 2253	CN=VPN RootCA Gen2018,OU=R&D (Test),O=PxCSW,C=DE	
Subject		
Common Name	VPN RootCA Gen2018	
RFC 2253	CN=VPN RootCA Gen2018,OU=R&D (Test),O=PxCSW,C=DE	
Validity		
Valid not before	2018-09-25T11:29:00 UTC	
Valid not after	2028-09-25T11:29:00 UTC	

Figure 3-20 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, Certificate Details

Detail view

٠

CRL Number	01	-
ssuer		A
Common Name	VPN SubCA Blomberg Gen2018	
RFC 2253	CN=VPN SubCA Blomberg Gen2018,OU=R&D (Test),O=PxCSW,C=DE	
Validity		
This Update	2018-10-02T10:33:00 UTC	
Next Update	2018-11-01T10:33:00 UTC	

Figure 3-21 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, Certificate Details

• To close the detail view, click on the "Close" button.

3.9.2.2 "IdentityStores" tab

On the "IdentityStores" tab, you can create and manage different IdentityStores. Each IdentityStore usually contains an RSA key pair and the corresponding key certificate. As an option, you can add further issuer certificates to an IdentityStore. The "IDevID" and "OpcUA-SelfSigned" IdentityStores are part of the system and supplied with the controller.

								V: 02 FW: 20 C: 00:A0:4	
AXC F 2152 2404267	Security Certificate Authentication								
	Trust Stores Identity Sto	ores							
-	Identity Store	Conte	ent						
- Information	IDevID		No.	Element	Туре	Description	Details		
eneral Data		-	1	Key Pair	RSA TPM 2048	RSA Key Pair		Ł	
		10	2	Certificate	Key Certificate	Common Name: AXC F 2152 Valid not after: 9999-12-31T23:59:59 UTC		Ł	
Diagnostics			3	Certificate	Issuer Certificate	Common Name: PLCnext Device Signing CA Valid not after: 2018-10-17T23:59:59 UTC			
		B	4	Certificate	Issuer Certificate	Common Name: PhoenixSign License PLCnext Sub CA G1 Valid not after: 2024-09-06T23:59:59 UTC			
Configuration			5	Certificate	Issuer Certificate	Common Name: PhoenixSign License Root CA G1 Valid not after: 2024-09-06T23:59:59 UTC	E		
	OPC UA-self-signed		No.	Element	Туре	Description	Details		Ø
- Security		-	1	Key Pair	RSA 2048	RSA Key Pair		01	×
ser Authentication		10	2	Certificate	Key Certificate	Common Name: eUAServer@please.customize.example.com	Ξ	01	
Certificate Authentication						Valid not after: 9999-12-31T23:59:59 UTC			
irewall									
- Administration									

Figure 3-22 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "IdentityStores" tab

Web-based management (WBM)

Adding an IdentityStore

- To add an IdentityStore, click on the 1 button at the end of the IdentityStore table.
- In the dialog that opens, enter a name in the "Name" input field.
- From the "Key Pair" drop-down list, select the way the key pair is to be added.

Possible settings:

- Enter
- Generate

"Enter"

• From the "Input Method" drop-down list, select the way the key pair is to be added to the IdentityStore.

Possible settings:

- File Upload
- Text Content

For additional information on the input method, please refer to Section "Input method" on page 89.

Name	IdentityStore1
Key Pair	Enter -
<u>Key Pair in PEM Forma</u>	<u>t:</u>
Input Method	File Upload
Browse	File Upload
browsen	Text Content



"Generate"

The controller automatically generates a key pair.

• From the "Key Type" drop-down list, select the encryption method.

Add Identity Store	
Name	IdentityStore1
Key Pair	Generate
Кеу Туре	RSA 2048
	RSA 2048
	RSA 4096
	RSA TPM 2048
	Adu concer

Figure 3-24 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "IdentityStores" tab, "Add Identity-Store" dialog, generating a key pair

• To add the IdentityStore, click on the "Add" button.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY	
Deleting an IdentityStore	 To delete an IdentityStore, click on the button to the right of the IdentityStore table. In the window that opens, click on the "Remove" button.
Renaming an Identity- Store	 To rename an IdentityStore, click on the 🖉 button to the right of the IdentityStore table. In the dialog that opens, enter a new name in the "New Name" input field. Click on the "Rename" button.
Detail view	 The detail views provide detailed information on every key pair, key certificate or issuer certificate: To open the detail view, click on the button of a key pair or certificate (see also Figure 3-20 "WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "TrustStores" tab, Certificate Details"). To close the detail view, click on the "Close" button.
	Key Type RSA TPM 2048 Debic Key: MIBIJANBgkqhkiG9w0BAQEFAAOCAQ8AMIIBCgKCAQEAx+w0ipbVvHV95fYu5PDT TophzoPTFVNB9yJ7Lv06UJcymJ55p3dre43S8vRXFpGLVTCubsw6SdrEMZ8sr4 BVU0a3ivlKj2JkI8scCc0D4/3kmAJMshv3UXTh8HRYeSVJ0UGdBMcpkwYR0s//p0 iapxW1L5nAstLKEwsc13KgKvPhs+KVr9qEx7fRUR7hT0oCl7fRaRnHxyMJU7CcM DA0+Mby++r3ltgSXL55sxowd/1+r90fTWyRbqIqvKr3uB4CkLKSwxt9APUfHfV4g 7kszRT0Z0b8SK3+uAPJ7rht83OB/mUcbNKK2CiIwvb0Ze71EmWHHDUI2DtY8RDhF uQIDAQAB END PUBLIC KEY
	Figure 3-25 WBM: "Certificate Authentication" page, "IdentityStores" tab, Key Pair De- tails
Downloading public keys or key certificates	 You can download the content of the public key of a key pair as a .pem file. If a key certificate is available, you can download it as a .crt file. Click on the button in the last column of the respective table entry. Save the file to a directory of your choice or directly open the file with a suitable tool.
Setting a key pair	 To set a key pair, click on the <i>integrabular</i> button in the last column of the table entry. The options for setting a key pair correspond to the options in Section "Adding an Identity-Store" on page 93.
Setting a key certificate	• To set a key certificate, click on the 🖉 button in the last column of the table entry. The options for setting a key certificate correspond to the options in Section "Adding an IdentityStore" on page 93.
Adding issuer certificates	 To add an issuer certificate, click on the button below the table of the corresponding IdentityStore. Select an input method. See Section "Adding certificates and CRLs" on page 89.
Deleting issuer certifi- cates	 To delete an issuer certificate, click on the button of the certificate. In the window that opens, click on the "Remove" button.

3.9.3 "Firewall" page

On the "Firewall" page, you can configure the firewall of your controller.

1

You can only open the "Firewall" page if you are logged into WBM as an administrator. For information on user roles, please refer to Section 3.9.1 on page 82.

tsch English									
									HW: 02 FW: 2019.
									MAC: 00:A0:45:13
	Securi	ty							
2404267	Firewall								
100 march									Reset
									Reset
	System I	Message							
Information									
General Data	System 9	Status							
	List of act	ivated firewall	rules			Show Ru	les		
Diagnostics									
Profinet		Configuratio	n						
	Status				SI	tart 👻	(Current: started)		
 Configuration 	Activation	1							
Proficloud							Firewall is started. After system restart the firew d: Firewall is stopped. After system restart the fi		
- Security									
Jser Authentication	Basic Co	onfiguration	User Config	uration					
Certificate Authentication									
irewall		Configuratio							
	Incomi	ing ICMP requ	ests accepted		When deactive	ated, pin	gs to the controller are blocked		
 Administration 	Outgoi	ng ICMP reque	ests accepted				V		
Firmware Update					When deactive	ated, pin	gs from the controller are blocked		
	Basic R	ules							
	Seq.	Direction		Protocol	To Port		Comment	Action	
	1	Input	Ŧ	UDP	12	3	NTP (Network Time Protocol)	Accept 👻	
	2	Input	¥	ТСР	411	00	Remoting (e.g. PLCnext Engineer)	Reject 👻	
	3	Input	w	TCP	22	2	SSH	Accept -	
	4	Input	Ŧ	TCP	80	D	HTTP	Accept -	
	5	Input	-	TCP	44	3	HTTPS, Proficloud, eHMI	Accept -	

Figure 3-26 WBM: "Firewall" page

"Reset" and "Apply" but-	_	"Reset": Click on the "Reset" button to reset the firewall to default settings.
tons	-	"Apply": Click on the "Apply" button to transfer all configured firewall settings to the
		controller.

"System Message"area In the "System Message" area, responses and warnings are displayed. The following system messages are possible:

Table 3-3	Possible system messages
-----------	--------------------------

System message	Description
Status=Ok	The configured firewall settings were successfully transferred to the controller.
Warning	A warning of the controller is issued, e.g., if one or several addi- tional filter configurations are available in the system. The warning contains the designations of all additionally loaded filter tables.
Error	At least one firewall configuration is faulty.

"System Status" area

- If the firewall is active, you can generate an overview of all enabled firewall rules in a TXT file in the "System Status" area.
- Click on the "Show Rules" button.

The TXT file with the activated firewall rules is generated and opened.

• To save the TXT file, click on the "Save to file" button in the open dialog.

The TXT file with the activated firewall rules is saved to the selected directory.

Firewall Active Rules

Table	Family	Content
filter	ip	table ip filter { chain input { type filter hook input priority 0; policy drop; iif "lo" accept icmp type echo-request accept icmp type echo-reply accept ct state established accept ct state related accept jump basic_filter } chain output { type filter hook output priority 0; policy drop; icmp type echo-request accept ct state established accept ct state related accept ct state new accept jump user_output } chain basic_filter { udp dport ntp accept comment "NTP (Network Time Protocol)" tcp dport 41100 reject comment "Remoting (e.g. PLCnext Engineer)" tcp dport ssh accept comment "SSH" tcp dport http accept comment "HTTP" tcp dport https accept comment "HTTPS, Proficloud, eHMI" tcp dport 4840 accept comment "OPC UA" tcp dport 17725 reject comment "(Standard-Port) External Mode Matlab Simulink" tcp dport snmp reject comment "SMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)" udp dport 34962-34964 reject comment "Profinet Uni-/Multicast Ports" jump user_input } chain user_input { } chain user_output { } }

Figure 3-27 WBM: "Firewall" page, "Firewall Active Rules" dialog

"General Configuration" area

In the "General Configuration" area, you can view the current firewall status (e.g., Current: stopped), temporarily activate or deactivate the firewall, or permanently activate or deactivate the firewall.

Temporarily activating or deactivating the firewall

- To temporarily activate the firewall, select the "Start" or "Restart" entry from the dropdown list in the "Status" line.
- To activate the configuration, click on the "Apply" button.

The firewall is activated. This setting is no longer active after a restart of the controller.

- To temporarily deactivate the firewall, select the "Stop" entry from the drop-down list in the "Status" line.
- To activate the configuration, click on the "Apply" button.

The firewall is deactivated. This setting is no longer active after a restart of the controller.

Permanently activating or deactivating the firewall:

• To permanently activate the firewall, enable the check box in the "Activation" line.

The firewall is activated. The firewall remains activated even after a restart of the controller.

• To permanently deactivate the firewall, disable the check box in the "Activation" line.

The firewall is deactivated. The firewall remains deactivated even after a restart of the controller.

3.9.3.1 Configuring the firewall

•

Configuration of the firewall rules is divided into "Basic Configuration" and "User Configuration". The "Basic Configuration" tab provides pre-defined firewall rules while you can create your own firewall rules on the "User Configuration" tab.

"Action" column The options for activating and deactivating the filter rules are available in the "Action" column on the "Basic Configuration" tab as well as on the "User Configuration" tab.

• Select a setting from the drop-down list in the "Action" column for each firewall rule:

Option	Description
Accept	Connections are accepted. The connection request is accepted. The connection can be established.
Drop	Connections are dropped. There is no response to the request. The packet is dropped.
Reject	Connections are rejected. The sender receives a response via the rejected connection.
Continue	The rule is not executed. Choose this option to skip the basic rule and instead use a user-specific rule for the port. User-specific rules are configured in the "User Configu- ration" area.

Table 3-4 Settings in the "Action" column

To activate the configuration, click on the "Apply" button.

"Basic Configuration" tab

On the "Basic Configuration" tab, the rules that are stored for the firewall upon delivery are displayed. You can select how the respective connections are to be treated for each rule.

"ICMP Configurations"

In the "ICMP Configurations", you can specify how incoming and outgoing ICMP echo requests are to be treated. Possible settings:

"Incoming ICMP requests accepted"

Check box enabled: Incoming ICMP echo requests are accepted. Check box disabled: Incoming ICMP echo requests are blocked. The controller cannot be reached using a ping command.

- "Outgoing ICMP requests accepted"

Check box enabled: Outgoing ICMP echo requests are accepted. Check box disabled: Outgoing ICMP echo requests are blocked. Ping commands cannot be issued by the controller.

"Basic Rules"

The "Basic Rules" area provides pre-defined firewall rules for different incoming connections, which you can enable or disable in the "Action" column. The configuration baseline is stored in the /etc/nftables/plcnext-filter file in the controller file system.

The configuration baseline contains the following rules for incoming connections ("Direction": "Input").

• Select an action for each rule (see Section ""Action" column" on page 97):

Table 3-5 Basic rules

Description	Protocol	Port
NTP (Network Time Protocol)	UDP	Port 123
Common Remoting, e.g., using PLCnext Engineer	ТСР	Port 41100
SSH connections (e.g., for SSH shell connection or SFTP connection)	ТСР	Port 22
НТТР	TCP	Port 80
HTTPS, Proficloud, eHMI (web server for eHMI and WBM)	ТСР	Port 443
OPC UA	TCP	Port 4840
External Mode Matlab [®] Simulink [®]	TCP	Port 17725
SNMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)	ТСР	Port 161
PROFINET uni/multicast ports	UDP	Ports 34962-34964

The settings are valid for all Ethernet interfaces. A limitation to certain Ethernet interfaces is specified via a user-specific rule in the "User Configuration" area (see Section "User configurations" on page 99).

With some activated firewall rules, there is a risk that accessing the controller becomes difficult due to blocked ports. Restoring access permissions can result in the loss of user data. Therefore, please consider the following notes when configuring basic rules:



Blocking the WBM access:

If you select the "Reject" or "Drop" action for basic rule no. 5 (TCP Port 443 - HTTPS, Proficloud, eHMI), you can no longer access the WBM of the controller after activating the rule ("Apply"). Therefore, you can no longer change the firewall rules via WBM.

- In case of a permanently started firewall (enabled "Activation" check box): To stop the firewall in this case, you have to reset the controller to the default settings. For more detailed information, please refer to the user manual for your controller. Note that during a reset to the default settings, user-specific data (applications, configuration, etc.) are deleted.
- Once the firewall is deactivated, you can again access WBM.
- In case of a permanently stopped firewall (disabled "Activation" check box):
 The firewall is stopped after restarting the controller. You can again access WBM.



Observe the following when using a PROFINET controller:

If you use the controller as a PROFINET controller, you have to ensure that, with an activated firewall, "Accept" is selected for basic rule no. 9 (UDP ports 34962-34964 - PROF-INET uni/multicast ports). Otherwise, establishing a connection to certain PROFINET devices is not possible.

User configurations

In addition or as an alternative to the basic rules, you can define and activate your own, userspecific firewall rules for different filter categories in the "User Configuration" area. You can create new rules, delete rules or change the order of rules using the buttons at the end of the table.

Adding a new rule

Button	Function
+	"New Rule": Add a new filter rule
×	"Delete Rule": Delete the selected filter rule
^	"Move rule up/down" Move the filter rule upwards/downwards. The order determines the priority of the rules.

Inp	ut Rules	Output Rules						
omir	na connectio	ns, protocols and por	s					
		, protocolo ana por						
Seq.	Interface		From IP	From Port	Το ΙΡ	To Port	Comment	Action

Figure 3-28 WBM: "Firewall" page, "User Configuration" tab, "Input Rules", adding a new rule

You can define user-specific filter rules for specific ports, protocols and IP addresses for incoming ("Input Rules") and outgoing ("Output Rules") connections. • For a user-specific filter rule, define the following parameters:

Table 3-6 User configurations

Column	Description
Interface ("Input Rules" only)	 You can configure "Input Rules" specifically for an interface. From the drop-down list, select the desired Ethernet interface to which the filter rule is to be applied.
	The "Output Rules" apply to all interfaces.
Protocol	 From the drop-down list, select the TCP, UDP, or UDPLITE protocol or all of them.
From IP From Port	 In the "From IP" field, enter an IP address, if applicable. In the "From Port" field, enter the corresponding ports, if applicable.
	The rule applies to connections coming in from this address. You can specify all ports, selected ports, or a value range.
To IP To Port	In the "To IP" field, enter an IP address, if applicable. In the "To Port" field, enter the corresponding ports, if applicable. The rule applies to connections going out to this address. You can specify all ports, selected ports, or a value range.
Comment	Here, enter a description of the filter rule.
Action	The options described in Section "Action" column" on page 97 can be used as the actions for the filter rules.

asic Cont	figuration	User Configurati	on						
Inpu	ut Rules	Output Rules							
utgoing	g connectio	ons, protocols and	ports						
Seq.	Proto	col	From IP	From Port	To IP	To Port	Comment	Actio	on
1	TCP	,	localhost	any	0.0.0	22	Outgoing SSH connections	Reject	•
2	TCP	•	0.0.0.0	any	0.0.0	any		Accept	•
			b If a co	utton. onfiguration is alre	eady available ir	ı the system, i	hem to the system, c t is overwritten durin sic settings, click on t	g this proc	cess
lang	ing a b	oasic rule	• lr T • N • C	his way, this rule low, create a nev configure the rule ration" area.	guration" area, s is skipped. v rule in the "Use for the protocol	et the basic ru er Configuratic and the port o	le to "Continue" in the n", "Input Rules" are f the basis rule from ction requests via TC	a. the "Basic	: Coi
			d	•		-	sively establishing th	-	

Blocking the PROFI-CLOUD access

Access to the "PROFICLOUD" WBM page is not controlled via user authentication (see Section ""User Authentication" page" on page 82). Each user with access to WBM can also access the "PROFICLOUD" page and make settings.

To protect the PROFICLOUD configuration against unauthorized access, you can create a user without access permission to WBM.

However, if WBM access is required, you can also block the connection to PROFICLOUD via a firewall configuration.

- For this, create a new rule under "User Configuration" using the following parameters:
 - Direction: Output
 - Protocol: TCP
 - Port: 443
 - Action: Drop/Reject
- To activate the configuration, click on the "Apply" button.

Take into consideration that due to this firewall rule, HTTPS and HMI connections are also blocked.

To permanently block the PROFICLOUD access for a user, you have to configure this user without security permissions (WBM page "User Authentication"). This way, a user cannot access the "Firewall" WBM page. The user can therefore not activate the firewall rule which blocks access to PROFICLOUD. If the user changes the configuration on the "PROFI-CLOUD" WBM page, this does not have any consequences as the corresponding ports are blocked by the firewall. The device cannot establish a connection to PROFICLOUD.

⇒ If you want to generally inhibit the communication with PROFICLOUD for one user, you have to configure this accordingly via the firewall and protect the firewall configuration against unauthorized access.

3.9.3.2 Activating another firewall file

In addition to the PLCnext Technology filter table, you can activate other filter tables. This might be necessary if you require certain functions that are not supported by the WBM configuration. This additional configuration is implemented via independent filter tables. You have to create the required functions via nftables commands. For this, you can edit a rule set in Linux using a text editor or load the file to the PC and change it.

āu —	nftables - plcnext - WinSCP		- 0	×
Datei Befehle Markierung Sitzung	Ansicht Hilfe			
Adresse 🍌 /etc/nftables			•	2 🛛
i 🔶 - 🔿 - 💼 🔁 🏠 🤁 🙀 Dat	eien suchen 🛛 🙀 Herunterladen 🙀 📝 Bearbeiten	🕒 🗙 🕞 Eigenscha	iften 🛃 📑 🕞 📰	🧈 »
🎲 🖭 👻 😭 Liste 🛛 🔂 Übe	ertragungsoptionen Standard 🔹 😽	•		
📮 plcnext 📑 Neue Sitzung				
⊿ -]]. / <root></root>	Name	Größe	Geändert	Rei
⊿ 🎍 etc	bridge-filter	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:34	rw
	inet-filter	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:35	rw
	ipv4-filter	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw
	ipv4-mangle	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw
	ipv4-nat	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw-
	ipv6-filter	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw
	ipv6-mangle	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw
	ipv6-nat	1 KB	21.06.2018 08:22:37	rw
	plcnext-default	1 KB	10.09.2018 15:24:24	rwo
	plcnext-filter	2 KB	04.09.2018 15:53:03	rwo

Figure 3-30 Example: nftables filter files

In WBM, clicking on the "Show Rules" button in the "System Status" area, all activated filter tables are displayed.

Firewall Active Rules

Tabelle	Familie	Inhalt
filter-default	ip	table ip filter-default { chain input { type filter hook input priority 0; policy drop; iif "lo" accept ether saddr icmp type echo-request accept ether saddr icmp type echo-reply accept ether saddr ct state established accept ether saddr ict of dport sha accept comment "SSH" ether saddr ict pdport sha accept http accept comment "HTTP" ether saddr ict pdport https accept comment "HTTPS, ProfiCloud, eHMI" } chain output { type filter hook output priority 0; policy drop; icmp type echo-request accept ct state established accept ct state new accept } }
filter	ip	table ip filter { chain input { type filter hook input priority 0; policy drop; iif "lo" accept icmp type echo-request accept icmp type echo-reply accept ct state established accept ct state related accept jump basic_filter } chain output { type filter hook output priority 0; policy drop; icmp type echo-request accept ct state established accept ct related accept ct state env accept jump user_output } chain basic_filter { udp dport ntp accept comment "NTP (Network Time Protocol)" tcp dport 41100 accept comment "Remoting (i.e. for PC Worx)" tcp dport ssh accept comment "Rtps accept comment "NTTPS, ProfiCloud, eHNI" tcp dport https accept comment "OPC UA" tcp dport 17725 accept comment "[Std, Port] External-Mode Matlab-Simulink" tcp dport snmp reject comment "SAMP (Simple Network Management Protocol)" udp dport 34962-34964 continue comment "Profinet Uni-/Multicast Ports" jump user_input } chain user_input { } chain user_output { } }

Figure 3-31 WBM: "Firewall" page, "Show Rules", several active filter tables

If an additional filter table is active, this is displayed as a warning message in the "System Message" area. The warning contains the designations of all additionally loaded filter tables.

Configuring the firewall with an additional filter table

- First, empty the active firmware configuration. To do so, enter the following command in the shell:
 - root# nft flush ruleset
- Create another independent filter table using command nft add table <family> <tablename>.
 - Example: root# nft add table ip loadfilter.
- Add an "Input Chain" of type "filter" and "hook input" to the created table. Use the following command: nft add chain [<family>] <name> { type <type> hook <hook> [de-

vice <device>] priority <priority> \; }
Example:root# nft add chain ip loadfilter input_limiter { type filter
hook input priority 0 \; }

- Limit the network load:
 - Limit the number of packets and indicate the parameters (icmp, tcp, udp, udplite, ip) using the following command.
 Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter icmp type echo-request limit rate 10/second accept

	 Limit the data rate (bytes/second, mbytes/second, mbytes/minute). Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter limit rate 10 mbytes/second accept or root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter limit rate over 10 mbytes/second drop
•	When adding a rule, select the Ethernet interface to which the rule is to be applied (iif <network interface="">). Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter iif eth0 icmp type echo-request limit rate over 100bytes/minute drop</network>
•	To count packets or display the throughput of bytes, use the following commands: For all incoming packets: nft add rule <chain> counter</chain> Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter counter Note: For "Accept" action: Accepted packets are counted. For "Drop" action: Blocked (dropped) packets are counted. For a specific protocol: nft add rule <chain> counter ip protocol <protocol></protocol></chain> Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter To drop or accept the data traffic for a specific protocol, use the following commands: nft add rule <chain> ip protocol, use the following commands: nft add rule <chain> ip protocol <protocol> accept/drop Example: root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter ip protocol udp accept or root# nft add rule loadfilter input_limiter ip protocol udplite drop</protocol></chain></chain>
Ex	ample of a simple filter file:
icmp type echo-reque tcp dport ssh accept } chain output_limiter {	comment "ssh wegen Fernzugriff zulassen" put priority 0; policy drop;

General nftables commands

Table 3-7General nftables commands

}

}

Command	Description
<pre>root# nft list tables</pre>	List all active filter tables
<pre>nft delete/flush/list table </pre>	Delete/empty/list a filter table Example: root# nft flush table loadfilter
root# nft list table handle	Delete a rule You can delete a rule by means of its handle number. First, use this command to list the handle numbers of the individual rules. Example: root# nft list table loadfilter -handle
nft delete rule [<family>] <chain> [handle <handle>]</handle></chain></family>	Then, you can delete the desired rule by means of its handle number. Example: root# nft delete rule filter input handle 90

Table 3-7General nftables commands

Command	Description
nft -f <filter-file></filter-file>	Load the content of a filter table from a file Example: root# nft -f loadfilter.rules
<pre>nft list table > <file></file></pre>	Save the content of a filter table to a file Example: root# nft list table loadfilter > loadfil- ter.rules

3.10 "Administration" area

3.10.1 "Firmware Update" page

On this page, you can implement a firmware update of the controller in the admin user role.

		HW: 02 FW: 2019.0 L MAC: 00:A0:45:13:B5
AXC F 2152	Administration	
2404267	Firmware Update	
	Select the update container file	
information	Browse	
eral Data		
Diagnostics		
net		
Configuration		
cloud	Status:	
Security	OK	
Authentication		
ificate Authentication		
wall		
Administration		
ware Update		

Figure 3-32 WBM: "Firmware Update" page

To update the controller firmware, proceed as follows:

- Download the *.zip firmware file at phoenixcontact.net/product/1051328.
- Unpack the *.zip firmware file.
- Run the *.exe setup file.
- Follow the instructions of the installation wizard.

During installation, the update file (*.raucb) and the files with device-specific information will be copied to the selected destination directory.

Deutsch English

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY	
Noting the installed firm- ware version	The firmware version currently installed on the controller is displayed on the "General Data" page (see Figure 3-5).
	• Before updating the firmware, note the installed firmware version to be able to check later if the firmware update was successful.
Selecting a firmware file	Click on "Browse"
	 In the file explorer that opens, select the *.raucb firmware file to be installed.

• Click on the "Open" button.

The firmware file to be installed is now displayed in WBM (see Figure 3-33).

RFC 4072S 1051328	Administration Firmware Update	
0	Select the update container file	
formation	Browse rfc4072s-image-base-bundle-rfc480-64.raucb	
il Data	Start Update Name: rfc4072s-image-base-bundle-rfc480-64,raucb	
agnostics	Size: 261.8 MB Type: raucb	
nfiguration		
curity		
1.1.1.1.		
ministration		
ministration are Update	Status:	
ministration		

Figure 3-33 WBM: Firmware file to be installed in WBM

Starting the firmware update

To start the firmware update, click on the "Start Update" button. ٠

The update file is transferred to the controller.

Once the file was transferred successfully, the firmware update is started.

The status of the file transfer and the status of the update process are displayed in WBM as progress bars.

Deutsch English		Logout
		HW: 01 FW: 2019.0 LTS MAC: 00:A0:45:F1:73:F2
RFC 4072S 1051328	Administration Firmware Update	
P P	Select the update container file	
Information	Browse rfc4072s-image-base-bundle-rfc480-64.raucb	
General Data	Name: rfc4072s-image-base-bundle-rfc480-64.raucb Size: 26.1.8 MB Type: raucb	
Diagnostics	The update container is being transferred to the Controller	
+ Configuration	Transfered: 261.8 MB Remaining: 0 Bytes 100%	
+ Security	The Controller is processing the update container	
- Administration	Completed	
Firmware Update	The connection to the Controller will be lost during the update process. After Controller reboot, restart the WBM and check the installed firmware version	
	Status: The firmware is being updated	
© 2017 PHOENIX CONTACT Legal Inform	nation	

Figure 3-34 WBM: Status of the file transfer and the update process

After the firmware update, the controller is restarted automatically.



Please note:

The connection to the controller is interrupted during the firmware update. After the firmware update, the WBM pages opened in the browser are no longer up to date. Once the controller is fully initialized after the restart, you have to log into WBM again to update the WBM pages.

The updated firmware version is displayed on the top right of every WBM page.

Checking the firmware version

- After the controller was restarted, log into WBM.
- Open the "General Data" page.
- Check if the correct firmware version is displayed.

If the previously installed firmware version is displayed after the firmware update (see Section "Noting the installed firmware version"), an error occurred during the firmware update.

In this case, repeat the firmware update.

4 Transferring variable values to the PROFICLOUD

In PLCnext Engineer, you can define variables whose values are to be transferred as a metric to PROFICLOUD. The variable values are stored in PROFICLOUD. The metrics can be represented graphically using the open platform Grafana.

4.1 Creating variables as OUT ports

Variables that are to be transferred from a PLCnext Engineer project to PROFICLOUD have to be created as OUT ports in PLCnext Engineer.

To create a variable in PLCnext Engineer as an OUT port, proceed as follows:

- In the "COMPONENTS" area, click on "Programming", "Local" and then on "Programs".
- Double-click on the desired POE from which variables are to be transferred to PROFICLOUD.
- Select the "Variables" editor.
- Enter the variable name and data type.
- In the "Usage" column, select "OUT Port".
- Enable the check box in the "Proficloud" column.

/ariables 💀 Code									
/ariables 10 Code	¥								
Variables							÷ – ⊏		
					- Τ	Search		ą	
es									
Name	Туре	Usage	Comment	Init	Retain	OPC	eHMI	Proficloud	
fault								I	ŕ
xCount_UP	BOOL	Local		FALSE					Γ
xCount_Down	BOOL	Local		FALSE					T
rAngle	REAL	Local		REAL#1.0					T
rASin	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				~	1
rACos	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				\checkmark	T
rATan	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				~	T
rSin	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				~	T
rCos	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				~	T
rTan	REAL	OUT Port		REAL#0.0				\checkmark	T
Enter variable name here									T

Figure 4-1 Creating variables as OUT ports



Note that the "Proficioud" check box has to be enabled for at least one OUT port so that the controller can send data to PROFICLOUD.
Time stamp	If you program your program in C++ using the PLCnext Technology Command Line Inter- face, you have to define the OUT ports of which the values are to be transferred to PROFI- CLOUD using attributes Output and Proficloud (//#attributes (Output Profi- cloud)), see Section "Creating IN and OUT ports" on page 120. The controller sets the time stamp for the data that is transferred to PROFICLOUD. In case of an interrupted Internet connection, the time stamp is not affected. When the Internet con- nection is interrupted, data is buffered in the controller. Make sure that the controller time is set to UTC (for additional information, please refer to Section "System time" on page 65).
	4.2 Preparing the controller for PROFICLOUD
	Before you can transfer metrics to PROFICLOUD, you have to register the controller in PROFICLOUD and activate the TSD PROFICLOUD service in the WBM of the controller. To do this, proceed as follows:
Activating TSD in WBM	To establish a connection to WBM, proceed as follows:
	Open the web browser on your PC.
	 In the address field, enter URL "http://IP address of the controller" (example: "http://192.168.1.10").
	If there is an HMI application on the controller, entering URL "http://IP address of the con- troller" calls the application. To call WBM in this case, enter URL "http://IP address of the controller/wbm".
	For information on WBM (web-based management) of your controller, please refer to Sec- tion "Web-based management (WBM)" on page 73.
	Open the "PROFICLOUD" page in the "Configuration" area.
	 Enable the check boxes for "Enable Proficioud Service" and "Enable Time-Series Data (TSD) Service".
	On the "PROFICLOUD" WBM page, you can check the connection status to PROFICLOUD in the "Proficloud Connection State" line of the table.
	4.3 Configuring PROFICLOUD
Connection to the PROFI-	• Open the web browser on your PC.
CLOUD administration	• In the address line, enter URL "https://www.proficloud.net".
Logging in	Enter your user name and password.
	Click the "Sign In" button to sign into PROFICLOUD.
Adding a controller	 To add the controller as a PROFICLOUD device, select the "TSD Device Manager" PROFICLOUD solution.

DPHCENIX CONTACT				
Home	PROFICLOUD Solutions			
Solutions	Community	PROFINET	TSD Analytics	TSD Device Manager
PROFICLOUD 2.0.0 © 2018 PHOENIX CONTACT	Contact Site notice Data Privacy			
	Figure 4-2 Select	ting the "TSD Device	Manager" PROFICL	OUD solution

The "Appliances" page opens.

CONTACT					1		•
Menu	Appliances						
Appliances							
Metrics		Search					Q
Goto Analytics	Show 5 T Entries		First	Previous	1	Next	Last
	Add Archive Appliance						
	Figure 4-3 "Appliances" page						
Registering PLCNEXT ECHNOLOGY	 Click on the "Add" button. The "Create Appliance" dialog opens. 						

• The "Create Appliance" dialog opens.

Create App	liance	×
Account na	ame	
1000		
UUID		
Appliance	name	
	Clo	Add
Figure 4-4	"Create Appliance	" dialog

• Enter the UUID of the controller in the "UUID" input field.

The UUID of the AXC F 2152 is printed on the side of the device, for example. You will also find the UUID in WBM in the "Configuration" area on the "PROFICLOUD" page.

- Enter a unique name for the controller in the "Appliance name" input field.
- Click on the "Add" button to save your entries.

4.4 Displaying an overview of the PROFICLOUD device metrics

When the controller is switched on, the metrics are automatically transferred to PROFICLOUD.

To display an overview of all of the metrics of a PROFICLOUD device, proceed as follows:

- Select the "TSD Device Manager" PROFICLOUD solution.
- The "Appliances" page opens.
- On the "Appliances" page, click on the controller of which the metrics are to be displayed.

The "Appliances/device name" page opens.

DPHŒNIX CONTACT					
Menu	Appliances / AXC F 2152				
Appliances Metrics	AXC F 2152	1		C E	Edit 💼 Delete
Goto Analytics	Metrics				
	C Auto-Discover	S	Search		٩
	Show 5 • Entries	Comment↓↑		First Previous 1	Edit
	.rSin	Automatically generated description	on.		c î
	.rCos	Automatically generated descriptic	on.		C â

Figure 4-5 "Appliances/device name" page

The metrics received are shown in the "Metrics" area.

4.5 Displaying the metrics graphically in Grafana

The metrics can be represented graphically using the open platform Grafana. To display a metric graphically in Grafana, proceed as follows:

Establishing a connection to Grafana

- Select the "TSD Device Manager" PROFICLOUD solution. •
- Select the "Go to Analytics" entry in the menu.

The Grafana homepage opens.

🕑 - 🗱 Home - 🌣		✓ Zoom Out ➤ O Last 6 hours	C
	Home Dashboard		
Starred dashboards		Installed Apps	
Recently viewed dashboards		None installed. Browse Grafana.com	
		Installed Panels	
		None installed. Browse Grafana.com	
		Installed Datasources	
		K KairosDB v2.0.1 Up to date	e
	Figure 4-6 Grafana: Homepage		
Creating a new dashboard	• Click on the "Home" button. The "Home" page opens.		
• Q Find dashboards by name	▼ sta	arred tags	
# Home		★ New Dashboard	

Figure 4-7 Grafana: "Home" page

Click on the "New Dashboard" button to create a new dashboard. •

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

	The "New dashb	oard" page opens.					
🖻 - 🔛 New dashboard - 🖺 🔹					🔇 Zoom Out 👂	🕑 Last 6 hours	C
panel search filter Graph	Singlestat Table	Text Heatmap	Alert List	Dashboard list	Plugin list		
+ ADD ROW							
	Figure 4-8 C	Grafana: "New dashboa	rd" page				
electing the display type electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of p select the metric to be	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F	Figure 4-9)	
	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to selec lay opens for the type o	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F	-igure 4-9)	
	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of o select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F nel Title".	Figure 4-9)	
electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F nel Title".		
electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of o select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F nel Title".		
electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of o select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c	lisplay sele	cted (see F nel Title".		
electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of o select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c e displayed, o	lisplay sele	cted (see F inel Title". < zoom Out >	C Last 6 hours	
electing a metric	 Click on one An example disp To be able to Click on the 	of the buttons to select lay opens for the type of o select the metric to be "Edit" button.	t a display ty of graphical c e displayed, o	lisplay sele click on "Pa	cted (see F inel Title". < zoom Out >	C Last 6 hours	

An area in which you are able to edit the details of the selected graphical display opens below the example display.

- Switch to the "Metrics" tab.
- Select the metric to be displayed.

Gr	aph _{General}	Metrics Axes Legend Display Alert Time range	×
0	Data Source	•	► Query Inspector
- A	Metric	.rSin	Peak filter 🗆 🔳 👁 🛍
	Tags	+	
	Group By	+	
	Aggregators	+	
	Alias	default • 🖉	
- A	Add Query		
		Figure 4-10 Grafana: Selecting the metric to be displayed	
		Close the bottom area by clicking on the "X" button.	

The selected metric is now displayed graphically.



Figure 4-11 Grafana: Graphical display of the selected metric

5 Structure of a C++ program



If you want to consult the PLCnext Technology SDK C++ header files in parallel while reading this section, first install the necessary tools as described in "Creating programs with C++" on page 151.



When naming PLCnext Technology components, observe the naming conventions in Section "PLCnext Technology naming conventions" on page 193.

With PLCnext Technology, programs that were created in different programming languages can be used together. For instantiation and calling by the PLCnext Technology firmware, the programs have a uniform basis. This basis applies to all programming languages. PLCnext Technology follows an object-oriented approach. The following base classes are relevant for creating a C++ program for the PLCnext Technology platform.

Library	LibraryBase class	The LibraryBase class is the smallest unit that can be downloaded. It represents an *.so file (shared object). One "Library" can instantiate one or more "Components".
Component	ComponentBase class	The ComponentBase class is a collection of functions (programs) within the PLCnext Technology platform. One "component" can instantiate one or more "programs". The "Program" in- stances can interact via their shared "Component" instance.
Program	ProgramBase class	With PLCnext Technology, instances of the ProgramBase class can be performed in real time. Here, the IN and OUT ports are published.

The base classes are stored in the Phoenix Contact SDK. Derive from these base classes to create your application.

Some sample applications programmed in C++ can be found at https://github.com/plcnext.

5.1 "ILibrary" and "LibraryBase"



Using the PLCnCLI (see Section 6.1, "PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface)") or the Eclipse[®] add-in creates the meta configuration files (libmeta, compmeta, progmeta) required for PLCnext Engineer as well as the following functions with a functional implementation during compiling. If you have special requirements that go beyond this, the following descriptions will help you understand the functions.

In a shared object (*.so), there can be exactly one library class (singleton pattern). The PLCnext Technology firmware initializes the *.so after it has been loaded by calling the following function:

extern "C" ARP_CXX_SYMBOL_EXPORT ILibrary& ArpDynamicLibraryMain(AppDomain& appDomain);

	This function is implemented in such a way that the library class is created and returned as an interface. The library object implements the "ILibrary" interface by means of derivation from the "LibraryBase" class. "ILibrary" is defined in header Arp/System/Acf/ILibrary.hpp, and "LibraryBase" in Arp/System/Acf/LibraryBase.hpp. The "LibraryBase" class particularly implements a "ComponentFactory" with the "IComponentFactory" interface.
	The PLCnext Technology firmware can thus create instances of the components when loading the PLC program. In order for the PLCnext Technology firmware to be able to deter- mine the necessary information (names of components and program types, program ports), the library class also has to implement the "IMetaLibrary" interface (#include "Arp/Plc/Commons/Meta/IMetaLibrary.hpp "). This interface then requires implemen- tation of the "ITypeInfoProvider" interface (#include "Arp/Plc/Commons/Meta/TypeInfoProvider.hpp "), whereby the firmware learns the names of the components and program types as well as their IN and OUT ports.
	The "MetaLibraryBase" class (#include "Arp/Plc/Commons/Meta/MetaLibraryBase.hpp") therefore expands the "LibraryBase" class by these interfaces.
	The component instances the PLCnext Technology firmware creates is defined in the *.acf.config and *.plm.config files.
	"AppDomain" and "IApplication
	If you use the Eclipse [®] add-in, the required header files are included automatically. – "AppDomain": Arp/System/Core/AppDomain.hpp – "IApplication": Arp/System/Acf/IApplication.hpp
	The PLCnext Technology firmware is distributed among several operating system pro- cesses.
"AppDomain"	An "AppDomain" represents such an operating system process. If a library is to be used in several processes, singleton implementation is performed for each process. The "AppDomain" class is used for this. Since the PLCnext Technology firmware uses the same mechanism for instantiation, initialization and administration of user components as it does for core components, the "AppDomain" is also used here.
"IApplication"	The operating system process is represented by the "IApplication" interface.

5.2 "IComponent" and "ComponentBase"

Using the PLCnCLI (see Section 6.1, "PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface)") or the Eclipse[®] add-in creates the meta configuration files (libmeta, compmeta, progmeta) required for PLCnext Engineer as well as the following functions with a functional implementation during compiling. If you have special requirements that go beyond this, the following descriptions will help you understand the functions.

The basic integration of a component into PLCnext Technology is implemented by means of derivation from the "ComponentBase" class or via the "IComponent" interface. There are specialized components for various purposes. These specializations are performed by implementing additional interfaces, which are described in the following subsections. To be able to use the classes, you have to include (**#include**) the corresponding header files (.hpp).

- "IComponent": Arp/System/Acf/IComponent.hpp
- "ComponentBase": Arp/System/Acf/ComponentBase.hpp

i

	The following "IComponent" operations are called by the ACF or PLM for each component:
	- void Initialize(void)
	- void SubscribeServices(void)
	- void LoadSettings(const String& settingsPath)
	<pre>- void SetupSettings(void)</pre>
	- void PublishServices(void)
	In the second phase, the project configuration is loaded and set up. If an exception occurs here, the project configuration is unloaded again and the controller starts with an empty con- figuration. The ACF or PLM calls the following "IComponent" operations: - void LoadConfig(void) - void SetupConfig(void)
Initialize	The component instance is initialized via the functions specified below. These have to be implemented in the component class. For each instantiated component, the PLCnext Technology firmware calls the following function first:
virtual void Initialize(void);
SubscribeServices	Resources that have been allocated and initialized for the component in the Initialize() function have to be enabled in the Dispose() function. Thereafter, the firmware calls the following function for each instantiated component.
virtual void SubscribeSe	rvices(void);
	Here, a component can obtain RSC services that have already been registered.
LoadSettings	Subsequently, the LoadSettings() function is called. The path to the settings (settingsPath) can be specified for the respective component instance in the *.acf.config configuration file. The format and content of this configuration file have to be specified by the respective component (type). The PLCnext Technology firmware does not make any assumptions regarding these.
virtual void LoadSetting	s(const String& settingsPath);
SetupSettings	Once the settingsPath has been specified, the settings can be applied. The following function is used for this:
virtual void SetupSettin	gs(void);
PublishServices	The PLM does not call the PublishServices function. Creating and registering RSC services is reserved for the core components.
virtual void PublishServ	ices(void);
LoadConfig/SetupConfig	When the project is subsequently loaded, the following functions are called:
virtual void LoadConfig(virtual void SetupConfig	
ResetConfig	The configuration of the components is reset with the following function:
virtual void ResetConfig	(void);
	The interface is identical for the user program and the internal user component. It is simply called at different times.

Dispose	manager config fault/Plc/Plm/Pl – Internal user co and configured fault.acf.config"	ger manages components that make user programs available. The PLC ures them in a file referenced by "/opt/plcnext/projects/De- m.acf.config". mponents are managed by the ACF (Application Control Framework) respectively in a file referenced by "/opt/plcnext/Default/De- . The ACF generates these components when booting the firmware.			
virtual void Dispose(void					
	~ / 3				
	5.2.1 "IProg	gramComponent" and "IProgramProvider"			
	and "IMetaCompon Base" class. The PL	an instantiate user programs implements the "IProgramComponent" ent" interfaces by means of derivation from the "ProgramComponent- Cnext Technology firmware requires these interfaces to instantiate pro- nformation on their ports.			
	nent, which then impission is prefixed to the heat	ates the necessary code. For this, a code is generated for each compo- plements the "IProgramProvider" interface. If the //#program directive ader of a program definition, the PLCnCLI knows which component can ogram. The next directive //#component() is used to name the corre- nt.			
//#program //#component(SampleCompor class SampleProgram : put					
	The corresponding used.	header files (.hpp) are included (#include) so that the classes can be			
		oonent": Arp/Plc/Esm/IProgramComponent.hpp der": Arp/Plc/Esm/IProgramProvider.hpp			
	The component implements the "IProgramComponent" interface by means of derivation from the "ProgramComponentBase" class. In addition, the component creates a private member variable that is passed to the "ProgramComponentBase" class in the constructor of the component. This member variable implements the "IProgramProvider" interface by means of derivation from the "IProgramProviderBase" class.				
	The "ProgramProvider" makes the following function available for the instantiation of pro- grams:				
IProgram::Ptr CreateProgr	ramInternal(const	String& programName, const String& programType)			
	The PLCnext Techr	ology firmware calls this function when loading the PLC program.			
	In the process, the f *.esm.config files:	ollowing parameters are passed on in the way they are defined in the			
	Attribute	Description			
	programName	Instance name of the program			

Attribute	Description	
programName	Instance name of the program	
	The instance name is configured in the PLCnext Engineer task editor or manually via the *.esm.config file.	
programType	Class name of the program	
	For each component, the *.compmeta and *.progmeta files describe the programs (type) a component (type) can generate.	

5.2.2 "IProgram" and "ProgramBase"

An instantiated user program implements the "IProgram" interface. As a result, a constructor to which the instance name is passed on and the Execute() function that is called by the ESM task during each pass are available. The PLCnCLI creates such a user program class that inherits the "IProgram" interface from the "ProgramBase" base class by means of derivation. Furthermore, the PLCnCLI enables reporting the IN and OUT ports of the program to the GDS.

```
Creating IN and OUT ports
```

UT ports The header file of your program (e.g., MyProgram.hpp) must contain the port definition. The ports are created as **public** according to the following pattern.

For example:

public:		
//#port		
//#attributes(Input)	
//#name()		
int myInPort;		

A port is specified by an added attribute. The following attributes are available:

Table 5-1	Attributes for port definition	

Attribute	Description	
Input	The variable is defined as IN port.	
Output	The variable is defined as OUT port.	
Retain	The variable name is retained in case of a warm and hot restart (only initialized in case of a cold restart).	
Орс	The variable is visible for OPC UA.	
Ehmi	The variable is visible for the PLCnext Engineer HMI.	
Proficloud	The variable is visible for PROFICLOUD (for OUT ports only).	

Multiple attributes are separated by the "I" separator. E.g.: //#attributes (Input|Opc|Retain)

From the attributes, the PLCnCLI generates the meta data. If a variable does not have an attribute, is can only be used internally by the program.

Provide variables you want to connect via the GDS with an **Input** or **Output** attribute, depending on the data direction. You can use all other attributes to control the initialization behavior or enable visibility in OPC UA or a PLCnext Engineer visualization system. You can also use these additional attributes without the **Input** or **Output** attributes. This way, the variable is visible but cannot be connected via the GDS. The **Proficloud** attribute only works in conjunction with the **Output** attribute.

The variable name is also used as the port name. If you want to name the port differently in the GDS, you can use the **//#name()** directive to enter a different port name.

To be able to use the classes, you have to include (**#include**) the corresponding header files (.hpp).

- "IProgram": Arp/Plc/Esm/IProgram.hpp
- "ProgramBase": Arp/Plc/Esm/ProgramBase.hpp

5.2.3 "IControllerComponent"

A component created with the PLCnCLI is automatically derived from the "IControllerInterface" interface. An internal user component may need individual lower-priority threads to perform longer tasks outside of the ESM task. To this end, the component can implement the "IControllerComponent" interface in addition to "IComponent".

The "IControllerComponent" interface defines the following two functions:

void Start (void); void Stop (void);	
	If the component is managed by the PLC manager ("User Program"): – During a cold, warm or hot restart of the PLC application, the Start() function is called after all program objects of the component have been generated. This is an ideal time to start individual, lower-priority threads the programs delegate tasks to.

 The Stop() function is called when the PLC application is stopped, before the programs are destroyed. At this point, the created threads can be destroyed again.

If the component is managed by the ACF (Automation Component Framework) ("Internal User Component"):

- When the firmware is started (boot or /etc/init.d/plcnext start), the Start() function is called after all components have been generated. This is an ideal time to start threads which perform the component tasks.
- When the firmware is stopped (/etc/init.d/plcnext stop), the Stop() function is called before the components are destroyed.

To use this class, you have to include (#include) the corresponding header file (.hpp).

"IProgram": Arp/System/Acf/IControllerComponent.hpp

5.3 Several component types in the same library

1

Using the PLCnCLI (see Section 6.1, "PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface)") or the Eclipse[®] add-in creates the meta configuration files (libmeta, compmeta, progmeta) required for PLCnext Engineer as well as the following functions with a functional implementation during compiling. If you have special requirements that go beyond this, the following descriptions will help you understand the functions.

Initially, the Eclipse[®] add-in creates one component type in a library. If several component types are to be instantiated in the same library, each component type has to be added to the factory. To this end, every component type is introduced to the factory by calling the AddFactoryMethod() function in the constructor of the library object. The PLCnCLI generates the required code if the //#component directive is prefixed in the header of the class definition:

//#component
class SampleComponent : public ComponentBase,

There are two ways to instantiate components:

- "Internal User Components", managed by the ACF, are instantiated by the Default.acf.config (projects/Default/Default.acf.config) file.

 "User Programs", managed by the PLM, are instantiated by the Plm.config (/opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Plc/Plm/Plm.config) file.
 When used as PLCnext Engineer library, this is performed automatically by PLCnext Engineer, but it can also be done manually (see Section "Task configuration via configuration files" on page 23).

5.4 PLM (Program Library Manager)

The PLM (Program Library Manager) is part of the PLC manager (see "PLC manager" on page 16). It loads and unloads components during the runtime of the PLCnext Technology firmware. The PLM controls the entire service life of the component instance in accordance with the states of the controller and changes to these states by means of the PLCnext Engineer commands:

- Cold or warm restart
- Hot restart
- Reset
- Download (a reset is implicitly performed prior to the download, however, not during Download Changes)

5.4.1 Functions

The PLM takes on the role of creating, configuring and destroying the components that can instantiate user programs. The application components are controlled as follows:

Calling "IComponent"	User action in PLCnext Engineer
<pre>void Initialize()</pre>	- Restart
	 Send project
<pre>void SubscribeServices()</pre>	- Restart
	 Send project
<pre>void LoadSettings(const</pre>	- Reboot
<pre>string & settingsPath)</pre>	 Send project
<pre>void SetupSettings()</pre>	- Restart
	 Send project
<pre>void PublishServices()</pre>	The function is only called by a firmware compo-
	nent, not by the PLM.
<pre>void LoadConfig()</pre>	- Restart
	 Cold restart
	 Warm restart
	 Send project

Table 5-2 "IComponent" (PLM) functions

Calling "IComponent"	User action in PLCnext Engineer
<pre>void SetupConfig()</pre>	– Reboot
	 Cold restart
	 Warm restart
	 Send project
<pre>void ResetConfig()</pre>	– Reboot
	 Cold restart
	 Warm restart
	 Send project
<pre>void Dispose()</pre>	 Send project

Table 5-2 "IComponent" (PLM) functions

5.4.2 Configuration

PLM configuration

Configuration of application programs

the configuration file of the application libraries and components.

The PLM system is configured via a configuration file. "ConfigSettings" provides the path to

The AcfConfigurationDocument format is used to configure components that can instantiate user programs. The Library, Component (name, type, library, isEnabled), and Settings (path) elements are evaluated by the PLM (see Section "Configuration files" on page 17).

5.5 ACF (Application Component Framework)

The (ACF) Application Component Framework is the foundation for the PLCnext Technology platform architecture. The ACF is a framework that enables component-based platform development and the configurative composition of the firmware for the devices. It can configuratively distribute the firmware to one or more processes. The ACF enables the configurative integration of user functions into the system. This way, you can extend PLCnext Technology devices with your own functions.

The ACF loads the various shared object files, and starts and manages the components contained therein in the desired sequence. In PLCnext Technology, components are instantiated like classes, i.e., several instances of one component type can exist. Instantiation is performed via configuration files for the ACF.

5.5.1 Libraries

ACF libraries are loaded dynamically by the ACF via configuration. They serve as the configurative extension of the system by means of platform or user functions. The ACF libraries must be available as dynamic libraries ("shared object" or *.so) and contain one or more ACF components. This enables the user to construct the firmware configuratively and add functions.

ACF libraries must be implemented in accordance with a particular template. The specified template is necessary to enable the ACF to access the code dynamically. Implementation consists of the following elements:

 Library class (derived from "LibraryBase"), implemented as a singleton. A library singleton is an instance or function that exists exactly once per library, e.g., "ComponentFactory".

At least one component class that implements the "IComponent" interface. "ComponentFactory" _ See Section ""ILibrary" and "Library Base"" on page 116 and Section ""IComponent" and "ComponentBase"" on page 117. Loading libraries A library is added to the ACF configuration as shown in the following example: ACF configuration - adding a library <?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?> <AcfConfigurationDocument xmlns="http://phoenixcontact.com/schema/acfconfig" xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance" xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.phoenixcontact.com/schema/acfconfig" schemaVersion="1.0" > <Libraries> <Library name="MyLibraryACF.Library"

```
<Library name="MyLibraryACF.Library"
binaryPath="$ARP_PROJECTS_DIR$/MyLibrary/libs/libMyLibraryACF.so" />
</Libraries>
```

</AcfConfigurationDocument>

The following table lists explanations of the individual attributes:

XML element	Description		
<libraries></libraries>	List of libraries Here, libraries are listed that are to be loaded to cre- ate components.		
<library></library>	Definition of a library		
name	The name of the library referenced in a component configuration.		
binaryPath	The binary path of the library that is to be loaded.		

5.5.2 Components

Components are classes in the sense of object-oriented programming. They are a part of a library and provide a public interface to the library. They therefore facilitate access to libraries with coherent functionality, and can be instantiated once or several times.

ACF components enable the PLCnext Technology platform to be extended configuratively. The ACF components must be implemented in accordance with a particular template. The ACF components must register with the "ComponentFactory" of the library. Furthermore, they must implement the "IComponent" interface in order for the ACF to dynamically integrate them into the firmware (see Section 5.2 ""IComponent" and "ComponentBase"").

ACF components are instantiated once or several times. They are assigned a system-wide unique instance name.

Adding a component Components are added to the ACF configuration as shown in the following example code:

Adding a component to the ACF configuration (example):

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="utf-8"?>
<AcfConfigurationDocument
xmlns="http://phoenixcontact.com/schema/acfconfig"
xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
```

```
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.phoenixcontact.com/schema/acfconfig"
schemaVersion="1.0" >
    <!-- Components included into /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Default.acf.config
    are managed by ACF while
    Components included into /opt/plcnext/projects/Default/Plc/Plm/Plm.config
    are managed by PLM
    -->
    <Components>
        <Component name="ACFDemo" type="MyLibraryACF.MyComponentACF" library="MyLibraryACF"
        settings="/opt/plcnext/projects/MyLibrary/MySettings.xml" />
        </Components>
```

</AcfConfigurationDocument>

XML element	Description
<components></components>	List of components
	Here, components are listed that are to be created.
<component></component>	Definition of a component
name	Name of the component
	It must be unique throughout the entire system be- cause all resources in the system are addressed via the component name.
type	Type name of the component
	The name is composed of <namespace>.<class> A library can provide several component types. Typ- ically, C++ type names are used here. The name is used in the code to register components with the "ComponentFactory". This is the only dependency between the system configuration and the source code.</class></namespace>
library	The name of the library that contains the component and was defined under <libraries>.</libraries>
<settings path=""></settings>	Path to the component settings file
	If the component requires a project configuration, the path to the component-specific project configuration must be specified in the settings file.

The following table lists explanations of the individual attributes:

5.5.3 Configuration

```
ACF configurationAs there is just one mechanism for the dynamic integration of components, the ACF configuration contains both the firmware settings and the project configuration for the user components. The difference is in the storage location. The respective *.acf.config file is either in the directory for the system settings or for the project configuration.Project configurationTransferring the project configuration to the controller can be done by PLCnext Engineer, other development tools (e.g. Eclipse<sup>®</sup> or Simulink<sup>®</sup> extension) or manually. Adding user components to the system is done by configuration files of the distinct components as well
```

as the ACF configuration files (*.acf.config). These add the user components to the system. An ARP_PROJECTS_DIR environment variable must be defined in the ACF settings for the project directory (/opt/plcnext/projects). PLCnext Engineer requires this for downloading the project. If an ACF system or service component has a project configuration, the configuration path must be specified in the component settings (*.settings, XML element <<u>ConfigSettings</u>> with path attribute).

The project directory contains at least two subdirectories: "Default" and "PCWE". The additional directory structure is constructed in the same way as the Arp component hierarchy.



Figure 5-1 Project directory

PCWE directory

The "PCWE" folder is intended for the download via PLCnext Engineer. Files that are stored here will be overwritten during the next download via PLCnext Engineer (see Section 2.6.4 "Generating configuration files with PLCnext Engineer").

Default directory: The "Default" folder is intended for storing further configuration files and for manual, configurative extension of the platform components (see Section 2.6.5 "Manual configuration").

5.6 Common classes

Common classes provide functions that may be helpful for programming. The PLCnext Technology-specific common classes are made available via the PLCnext Technology SDK. With the help of the SDK, it is possible to generate high-levellanguage programs in C++ for the PLCnext Technology framework. The SDK provides Arp firmware header files for this ("ARP SDK"). With the help of the ARP SDK, you can use common classes in your program. If you want to use a class, integrate it in your program via an **#include** command. Further information on the common classes and their applications is available directly in the code commentary.

The useful common classes mentioned in the following section are part of the Phoenix Contact SDK, for example. The classes are encapsulated in namespaces according to their subject areas.

5.6.1 Threading

During threading, parts of a program are executed in parallel. The "Threading" namespace provides methods for separating a program into several strings for simultaneous execution, thus improving the performance of the overall system.

	NOTE: Error due to changed priority
Ú	You can select a priority between 0 and 99. In order to not disturb the structure of the real- time threads, Phoenix Contact recommends priority 0. Otherwise, the stability of the firm- ware cannot be guaranteed. Programs in ESM tasks are intended for performing time-crit- ical tasks.
"CpuAffinity"	"CpuAffinity" is a bit mask in which one bit is available per processor core. The least signif- icant bit represents processor core 1. If this bit is set, the scheduler may execute the thread on this processor core. Several bits can be set simultaneously. In this case, the scheduler decides on which processor core the thread is started, and whether it is executed during runtime by another processor core. If the value of the parameter is 0, the scheduler can ex- ecute the thread on every available processor core.
"Thread"	One instance of this class is used to manage one thread, respectively. You must specify the function or method that is to be executed in a thread during instantiation. If the Thread::Start method is called, the thread is executed.
	The "Thread" class selects a low priority as standard. Phoenix Contact recommends retain- ing this priority in order not to endanger the priority structure of the various firmware and op- erating system tasks.
"WorkerThread"	In contrast to the "Thread" class, an instance of the "WorkerThread" class is executed cycli- cally, as soon as the WorkerThread::Start method is executed. You can define cyclic ex- ecution of the thread via the idletime parameter. The value is specified in ms.
"ThreadSettings"	 The "ThreadSettings" class is an auxiliary class for passing on the following thread parameters to a constructor of the "Thread" class: Name Priority CPU affinity (which CPU has been released for the execution of the task) Stack size (byte size)
"Mutex"	Using the "Mutex" class, you can prevent data of several threads being changed simultane- ously. The "Mutex" class instances can have two states: - Locked - Unlocked Once the Mutex:Lock method has been performed, i.e., the call from the method returns,
	the data is protected against modification by other threads. This state is retained until the instance calls the Unlock() command, therefore rescinding the locked state. Therefore, a

call is blocked until the thread which is in the Lock state is released again. To prevent a "Deadlock", i.e., a state in which a locked thread cannot be unlocked again, you can use the "LockGuard" class. This class automates Lock and Unlock of a "Mutex" instance.

"RwLock" "RwLock" provides a locking mechanism for increasing performance. This class is useful if several read accesses, but not many write accesses are necessary. The difference between "Mutex" class instances and this class is that the instances of the "RwLock" class permit several simultaneous read accesses to the locked structure. Write access at the same time, however, is not allowed. Instances of this class are therefore suitable for all data that is often read but only rarely updated.

5.6.2 "lpc" (inter-process communication)

The "lpc" namespace (inter-process communication) encapsulates classes which can be used to enable the communication between various processes on the same controller.

"Semaphore" Using the "Semaphore" class, semaphores are implemented in order to synchronize processes or threads. In principle, semaphores are integer counters. If one of the various Wait methods is called, the internal counter is lowered by one. If the current value of the counter is zero when a Wait method is called, the call is blocked until a different thread on the same semaphore instance calls the Post method (the Post method increases the internal counter).

"MessageQueue" Using the "MessageQueue" class, data can be exchanged between processes in the form of messages. The names of "MessageQueue" instances must begin with an "/" because otherwise, the call from the constructor will lead to an exception. The name of a queue corresponds to the file path in Linux.

5.6.3 "Chrono"

The "Chrono" namespace contains classes and functions with which the temporal sequences within an application can be controlled and influenced. This includes high-resolution measurement of time elapsed so far, and also triggering of actions after a predetermined period of time.

"Timer" The "Timer" class is a high-resolution chronometer for interval-based execution of methods. Instances of this class are used to execute one or more methods periodically in a defined interval. The "Timer" class calculates the next point in time at which the method is to be called. You only have to implement the method or methods that are to be called via the Timer definition.

5.6.4 "lo"

The "lo" namespace encapsulates all the functions necessary for working with files and folders within the file system of the underlying operating system.

"FileStream" The "FileStream" class is for stream-based editing (opening, writing, reading) of files. The various values in the class define, for example, whether a file is to be overwritten, an already existing file is to be opened, or a new file is to be created.

5.6.5 "Net"

The "Net" namespace encapsulates all the classes and functions that enable networkbased communication between processes on the same or separate controllers. For processes that run on the same controller, preferably use the functions from the "lpc" namespace (see Section ""lpc" (inter-process communication)" on page 128).

"Socket" The "Socket" class is an interface for Ethernet-based communication. Use instances of this class to establish an Ethernet-to-peer connection. Currently, the UPD and TCP protocols are supported (IPv4 only).

5.6.6 "Runtime"

The "Runtime" namespace encapsulates functions for manipulation of individual processes that are managed by the Arp firmware.

"SharedLibrary" Using the "SharedLibrary" class, shared libraries (.so files) are dynamically published or reloaded in applications during runtime. If a library is successfully reloaded with the SharedLibrary::Load method, the symbols contained (global variables, classes, methods, functions, etc.) are then known in the current program. The memory area can be requested with GetFunctionAddress in order for the functions of the library to be used in the program currently running.

Process The "Process" class is a high-level API for creating and managing new processes.

5.7 "Template Loggable"

PLCnext Technology provides a log file on the controller file system in which information on the system behavior of the PLCnext Technology firmware, warnings, error messages, and debugging messages are logged. You will therefore find valuable information that can help you in finding the causes of problems.

"Template Loggable" You can include the "Template Loggable<>" template class to automatically apply a tag to log messages. A tag can be used to determine from which component/program/... the message originates.

To use this class, you have to include (#include) the corresponding header file (.hpp).

"Loggable": Arp/System/Commons/Logging.h

The following log levels are supported. For each log level, a suitable method can be called.

Info

_

- Warning
- Error
- Fatal
- Example call:

log.info ("Info!");

Static call

Alternatively, you can also perform logging without the "Loggable" class. Messages can be written without creating a special logger using the root logger with the static "Log" class. The "root" tag is assigned to the message. The source of the message is thus not visible in the log file.

Log::Ennon (Ennon!");								
Log::Error ("Error!");								
				It is also possible to pass on and format variables. Placeholders in the form of $\{x\}$ are used for the variables, where x is the index of the variable.				
(,,Va	ariabl	.e a={0} b={1	}", a, b);					
Diagnostic log file			and debugging messages. tem of your controller. The f software is required for this	The "Output.log" diagnostic log file contains status information, warnings, error messages, and debugging messages. You will find the file in the /opt/plcnext/logs folder on the file system of your controller. The file system is accessed via the SFTP protocol. The SFTP client software is required for this (e.g., WinSCP) (see Section "Directories of the firmware components in the file system" on page 63).				
				ched. Whe	such a way that the messages are overwritten once n an error occurs, it is therefore recommended that as possible.			
			The diagnostic log file conta	ains the follo	owing message types:			
			• •		Error" or "Fatal" type are issued, the controller is			
			• •	stopped. The errors mainly arise during startup or during execution of a user program.				
			• •	 Warning: Warnings indicate potentially occurring errors. 				
			 Information: The core vide an overview of the 		s issue messages of type "Information". These pro-			
				system sta	is issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus.			
	A	В	vide an overview of the	system sta	is issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus.			
18.0	A 05.07	B 08:24:15.830	vide an overview of the Example: "Output.log" diag	system sta	is issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus. e:			
		_	vide an overview of the Example: "Output.log" diag C	system sta nostic log fil D	s issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus. e: E 'MyComponent' invoked of object with instance			
18.0	05.07	08:24:15.830	vide an overview of the Example: "Output.log" diag C MyLibrary.MyComponent	system sta nostic log fil D INFO -	<pre>s issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus. e:</pre>			
18.0	05.07 05.07	08:24:15.830 08:24:15.831	vide an overview of the Example: "Output.log" diag C MyLibrary.MyComponent Arp.Plc.Plm.Internal.PlmManager	system sta nostic log fil D INFO - INFO -	s issue messages of type "Information". These pro- tus. e:			
18.0 18.0 18.0	05.07 05.07 05.07	08:24:15.830 08:24:15.831 08:24:15.831	vide an overview of the Example: "Output.log" diag C MyLibrary.MyComponent Arp.Plc.Plm.Internal.PlmManager MyLibrary.MyComponent	system sta nostic log fil NFO - INFO - INFO -	E 'MyComponent' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1' Component 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1' from library 'MyLibrary' created. 'Initialize' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1' 'SubscribeServices' invoked of object with in-			

18.05.07	08:24:15.830	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	- 1	'MyComponent' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.831	Arp.Plc.Plm.Internal.PlmManager	INFC	- 1	Component 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1' from library 'MyLibrary' created.
18.05.07	08:24:15.831	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	-	'Initialize' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.832	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	- 1	'SubscribeServices' invoked of object with in- stance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.832	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	- 1	Component 'AcfDemo' not found!
18.05.07	08:24:15.833	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	- 1	'LoadSettings' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.833	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	-	'SetupSettings' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.834	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	-	'LoadConfig' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.834	MyLibrary.MyComponent	INFC	- 1	'SetupConfig' invoked of object with instance name 'MyLibrary.MyComponent-1'
18.05.07	08:24:15.988	MyLibrary.MyComponent.MyProgram	INFC	-	Added Port 'zaehler (of Data Type 8)' of instance MyLibrary.MyComponent-1/MyProgram1
18.05.07	08:24:15.989	MyLibrary.MyComponent.MyProgram	INFC	-	Added Port 'zaehler (of Data Type 8)' of instance MyLibrary.MyComponent-1/P1
18.05.07	08:24:16.121	Arp.Io.Axioline.AxiolineComponent	INFC	-	Axioline: Load configuration.
18.05.07	08:24:16.127	Arp.Io.Axioline.AxiolineComponent	INFC	-	AxiolineComponent::LoadPlc() Path=/opt/plc- next/projects/PCWE/Io/Arp.Io.AxlC/links.xml

	А	Date of the message in the format DD.MM.YY
B Time of the message in the format hh:mm:ss.ms		Time of the message in the format hh:mm:ss.ms

С	Component that triggers the message	
D	Message type (log level)	
E	Message, e.g., info text, error message, debugging message	

5.8 Using RSC services

You have the option of using the already registered RSC services of the SDK (Software Development Kit) via the "ServiceManager". It acts as the RSC API and is used to request services.

• Use the **#include** command in the header file to include the "ServiceManager" class and the desired service interface (e.g., "IDeviceStatusService").

Example header file: **#include** ServiceManager.hpp:

```
#pragma once
#include "Arp/System/Core/Arp.h"
#include "Arp/System/Acf/ComponentBase.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/Acf/IApplication.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/Acf/IControllerComponent.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/Commons/Logging.h"
#include "Arp/System/Rsc/ServiceManager.hpp"
#include "Arp/System/Commons/Threading/WorkerThread.hpp"
#include "Arp/Device/Interface/Services/IDeviceStatusService.hpp"
```

- Initialize a pointer to the object matching the desired service by calling the **GetService()** method of "ServiceManager".
- Pass on the name of the corresponding interface as the template argument.

You can place this call in the **SubscribeServices()** method of your component, for example:

Header file (.hpp):

```
class ExampleComponent : public .....
{
    ...
private: //services
    IDataAccessService::Ptr dataAccessService;
    ...
}
```

Source file (.cpp):

```
#include....
using namespace Arp::System::Rsc;
using namespace Arp ...
void ExampleComponent::SubscribeServices()
{
    // Get service handle
    this->deviceStatusService = ServiceManager::GetService<IDeviceStatusService>();
}
```



Please note that execution of RSC services can take some time (in particular Axioline and PROFINET services). For this reason, avoid direct calls from ESM tasks.

RSC services are available for the following areas. You will find more detailed descriptions in the sections specified.

- Axioline services: Read and write access to data and information of Axioline devices (see Section 5.8.1 on page 132)
- PROFINET services: Read and write access to data and information of PROFINET devices (see Section 5.8.2 on page 133)
- Device interface services: Access to information and properties of the operating system and controller hardware (see Section 5.8.3 on page 135)
- GDS services: Read and write access to the GDS data (see Section 5.8.4 on page 140)

5.8.1 RSC Axioline services



i

Please note that execution of RSC services can take some time. For this reason, avoid direct calls from ESM tasks.

The Axioline RSC services are only available to PLCnext Technology controllers that support an Axioline local bus.

The Axioline component can be extended via interfaces for Axioline services. You can use one interface for acyclic communication (PdiRead, PdiWrite). This interface is available via the RSC protocol. Parameterization data, diagnostics information, and status information (PDI = Parameters, Diagnostics and Information) of an Axioline device can be read or written with the RSC service. Acyclic communication is suitable for the exchange of data that does not recur cyclically.

5.8.1.1 "IAcyclicCommunicationService"

The "IAcyclicCommunicationService" RSC service in the "Arp/Io/Axioline/Services" namespace for acyclic communication makes the following methods available:

- PdiRead:
- Enables parameters, diagnostics and information of an Axioline device to be read PdiWrite

Enables parameters, diagnostics and information of an Axioline device to be written

PdiResult PdiRead(const PdiParam& pdiParam, std::vector<uint8>& data) PdiResult PdiWrite(const PdiParam& pdiParam, const std::vector<uint8>& data)

Parameters are necessary for executing PdiRead and PdiWrite. The PdiParam structure is used for transmitting the input parameters. The structure has the following elements:

Parameter	Description
uint16 Slot	Device number
uint8 Subslot	Subdevice number
uint16 Index	Object index
uint8 Subindex	Object subindex

The return values are written to the **PdiResult** structure. The structure has the following elements:

Parameter	Description
uint16 ErrorCode	Error code
uint16 AddInfo	Error code, further information

Data that is read (PdiRead) and data that is to be written (PdiWrite) is transferred in a type unit8 vector (data). A description of the data (maximum size, type, etc.) of the object description is available in the data sheet of the respective Axioline module.

You need the following headers to use the service. Include them via the **#include** command:

- Arp/Io/Axioline/Services/IAcyclicCommunicationService.hpp
- Arp/lo/Axioline/Services/PdiParam.hpp
- Arp/lo/Axioline/Services/PdiResult.hpp

System-specific information on the Axioline F system is available in the PLCnext Engineer online help system, as well as in the user manuals "Axioline F: System and installation" (UM EN AXL F SYS INST) and "Axioline F: Diagnostic registers and error messages" (UM EN AXL F SYS DIAG).

The user manuals can be downloaded at <u>phoenixcontact.net/qr/2404267/manual</u>. Further information is also available in the data sheets of the respective Axioline modules.

5.8.2 RSC PROFINET services



Please note that execution of RSC services can take some time. For this reason, avoid direct calls from ESM tasks.

The PROFINET component can be extended via interfaces for PROFINET services. You can use one interface for acyclic communication (RecordRead, RecordWrite). The interface is available via the RSC protocol. The parameter data, diagnostics information, and status information (PDI = Parameters, Diagnostics and Information) of a PROFINET device can be read or written with the RSC service. Acyclic communication is suitable for the exchange of data that does not recur cyclically.

5.8.2.1 "IAcyclicCommunicationService"

The "IAcyclicCommunicationService" RSC service in the "Arp/Io/ProfinetStack/Controller/Service" namespace for acyclic communication makes the following methods available:

- RecordRead: Enables parameters, diagnostics and information of a PROFINET device to be read
- RecordWrite
 - Enables parameters, diagnostics and information of a PROFINET device to be written

RecordResult RecordRead(const RecordParam& recordParam, std::vector<uint8>& data) RecordResult RecordWrite(const RecordParam& recordParam, const std::vector<uint8>& data)

> Parameters are necessary for executing **RecordRead** and **RecordWrite**. The "Record-Param" structure is used for transmitting the input parameters. The structure provides two ways of addressing a module:

- Version 1: Addressing via the ID
- Version 2: Addressing via an address that is made up of DeviceName, Slot, and Subslot

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

If one version is selected for addressing, the parameters of the other version must be 0 or empty.

The "RecordParam" structure has the following elements:

Parameter	Description			
uint16 ld	Node ID of the submodule The ID is assigned automatically. It can be viewed in PLCnext Engineer (version 1). For this, open the submodule list of the PROFINET submodule node.			
	PLANT			
	Search Image: Constraint of the search Image: Constraint of the search Image: Constraint of the search Image: Constraint of the search Image: Constraint of the search Image: Constraint of the search			
	V Car Project Submodule List			
	> (c) PLCnext (2) To # Type Function Location Node ID			
	HMI Webserver			
	CPC UA 32768 ∑ Interface 10			
	Image: Weight of the second			
	A axI-f-bk-pn-1: AXL F BK PN 32770 Port 2 12 12			
	To determine the ID, you can also use the AddressToID method of the IAddressConversionService.hpp service.			
RscString<512> DeviceName	Device name Name of the device that is to be addressed (version 2)			
uint16 Slot	Device number (version 2)			
uint8 Subslot	Subdevice number (version 2) Object index Maximum data amount Specifies the maximum amount of data to be written in bytes ("RecordRead") or the amount of data that is to be written to an object ("RecordWrite").			
uint16 Index				
uint8 Length				

The return values are written to the "RecordResult" structure. The structure has the parameters below. Further information on the parameters is available in the PROFINET specification (version 2.3).

- boolean ServiceDone
- uint8 ErrorCode
- uint8 ErrorDecode
- uint8 ErrorCode1
- uint8 ErrorCode2
- unit16 AddData1
- unit16 AddData2

Error code	Description		
0	No errors		
0xF0	Internal error The error can be evaluated more precisely via ErrorCode2.		
Further error codes	If a value other than 0xF0 or 0 is displayed in the ErrorCode1 element, the error is described in the ErrorCode, ErrorDe- code, ErrorCode1, ErrorCode2, AddData1, and AddData2 fields by the PROFINET specification.		

Table 5-4 ErrorCode2

Error code	Description
0x03	"InvalidAddress" ID or DeviceName/Slot/Subslot is invalid.
0x15	"RecordReadFailed" RecordRead failed. This error can occur, for example, if sev- eral devices simultaneously attempt to execute "RecordRead" on one device.
0x16	"RecordWriteFailed" RecordWrite failed. This error can occur, for example, if sev- eral devices simultaneously attempt to execute "RecordWrite" on one device.
0x17	"Timeout" No confirmation was received.

Data that is read ("RecordRead") or data that is to be written ("RecordWrite") is transferred in a type unit8 vector ("data"). A description of the data (maximum size, type, etc.) of the object description can be found in the PROFINET specification (version 2.3).

You need the following headers to use the service. If necessary, include them via the **#include** command:

- Arp/Io/ProfinetStack/Controller/Services/IAcyclicCommunicationService.hpp
- Arp/lo/ProfinetStack/Controller/Services/
- AcyclicCommunicationServiceProxyFactory.hpp
- Arp/lo/ProfinetStack/Controller/Services/RecordParam.hpp
- Arp/Io/ProfinetStack/Controller/Services/RecordResult.hpp

5.8.3 RSC device interface services



Please note that execution of RSC services can take some time. For this reason, avoid direct calls from ESM tasks.

The device interface services provide a range of functions for accessing properties of the operating system and the controller hardware. You can call the information with the following interfaces and defined parameters. The following headers are required to use the service. Integrate these via **#include**, if necessary:

- Arp/Device/Interface/Services/IDeviceInfoService.hpp
- Arp/Device/Interface/Services/IDeviceStatusService.hpp

5.8.3.1 "IDeviceInfoService"

The "IDeviceInfoService" RSC interface enables read access to device information. The status value of a parameter is read with the **GetItem()** method. The status values of several parameters are read with the **GetItems()** method.

```
RscVariant<512> GetItem(const RscString<512>& identifier)
void GetItems(GetItemsIdentifiersDelegate identifiersDelegate, GetItemsResultDelegate
resultDelegate)
```

The following parameters are available for calling information:

Table 5-5 "IDeviceInfoService" - parameters

Parameter	Data type	Description
General.DeviceClass	UInt32	The "DeviceClass" parameter specifies the device class. Cur- rently, only "ProgrammableLogicController" is supported. 0: Undefined 1: ProgrammableLogicController 2. BusCoupler 3: Switch
General.VendorName	String	The "VendorName" parameter indicates the name of the manufac- turer.
General.ArticleName	String	The "ArticleName" parameter indicates the device name.
General.ArticleNumber	String	The "ArticleNumber" parameter indicates the order number of the device.
General.SerialNumber	String	The "SerialNumber" parameter indicates the serial number of the device.
General.Firmware.Version	String	The "FirmwareVersion" parameter indicates the firmware version of the device. Here, 5-level notation (Major, Minor, Patch, Build, Status) is used.
General.Firmware.VersionMajor	Byte	"FirmwareVersionMajor" Info: The firmware version year is indicated without the first two digits. E.g., "2019" is indicated as "19".
General.Firmware.VersionMinor	Byte	"FirmwareVersionMinor"
General.Firmware.VersionPatch	Byte	"FirmwareVersionPatch"
General.Firmware.VersionBuild	UInt32	"FirmwareVersionBuild"
General.Firmware.VersionStatus	String	"FirmwareVersionStatus"
General.Firmware.BuildDate	String	"FirmwareBuildDate" ISO 8601 format <yyyy>-<mm>-<dd></dd></mm></yyyy>
General.Firmware.BuildTime	String	"FirmwareBuildTime" ISO 8601 format <hh>:<mm>:<ss></ss></mm></hh>
General.Hardware.Version	String	The "HardwareVersion" parameter indicates the hardware version of the device.
General.Fpga.Version	String	The "FPGAVersion" parameter indicates the FPGA version of the device. Here, 3-level notation (Major, Minor, Patch) is used.
General.Fpga.VersionMajor	Byte	"FPGAVersionMajor"
General.Fpga.VersionMinor	Byte	"FPGAVersionMinor"
General.Fpga.VersionPatch	Byte	"FPGAVersionPatch"

Parameter	Data type	Description
General.UniqueHardwareId	String	Sha256 Hash (32byte) hexadecimal coded as string
General.SPNS.Fpga.Version	String	FPGA version of the SPNS (only for devices with integrated safety controller)
General.SPNS.Fpga.VersionMajor	Byte	SPNS FPGA version Major
General.SPNS.Fpga.VersionMinor	Byte	SPNS FPGA version Minor
General.SPNS.Fpga.BuildVersion	Unsigned32	SPNS FPGA build version
General.SPNS.Firmware.Version	String	SPNS firmware version
General.SPNS.Firmware. VersionMajor	Byte	SPNS firmware version, Major
General.SPNS.Firmware. VersionMinor	Byte	SPNS firmware version, Minor
General.SPNS.Firmware.BuildVersion	Unsigned32	SPNS firmware build version
Interfaces.Ethernet.Count	Byte	The "NoOfNetworInterfaces" parameter indicates the number of network interfaces.
Interfaces.Ethernet.{adapterIndex}. {port}.Mac	String	The "Mac" parameter indicates the MAC address of the selected network interface.
		AA:BB:CC:DD:EE:FF adapterIndex= 1, 2, port = 0 for the interface, MAC port = 1, 2, for the MAC port

Table 5-5 "IDeviceInfoService" - parameters

5.8.3.2 "IDeviceStatusService"

This RSC interface enables read access to status information. The status value of a parameter is read using the GetItem() method. The status values of several parameters are read using the GetItems() method. Use the

deviceStatusService.GetItem("Parameters") method to call status information.

RscVariant<512> GetItem(const RscString<512>& identifier) void GetItems(GetItemsIdentifiersDelegate identifiersDelegate, GetItemsResultDelegate resultDelegate)

The following parameters are available for calling information:

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.DeviceHealth	Byte	The "DeviceHealth" parameter indicates the operating status of the device. 0: OK 1: WARNING 2: ERROR
Status.Cpu.Load.Percent	Byte	The "CPULoad" parameter indicates the complete processor load of the device as a percentage. 0% 100%
Status.Cpu{0}.Load.Percent	Byte	The "CPULoad{Core}" parameter indicates the processor load of the selected processor core of the device as a percentage. $0\% \dots 100\%$ 0x64 = 100% Core = 0, 1, 2, etc.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.Memory.Usage.Percent	Byte	The "MemoryUsage" parameter indicates the complete memory usage of the device as a percentage. 0% 100% 0x64 = 100%
Status.ProgramMemoryIEC. Usage.Percent	Byte	The "ProgramMemoryUsage" parameter indicates the program memory usage of the IEC runtime of the device as a percentage. 0% 100% 0x64 = 100%
Status.DataMemoryIEC. Usage.Percent	Byte	The "DataMemoryUsage" parameter indicates the data memory usage of the IEC runtime of the device as a percentage. 0% 100% 0x64 = 100%
Status.RetainMemory.Usage.Percent	Byte	The "RetainMemoryUsage" parameter indicates the complete re- tain memory usage of the device as a percentage. 0% 100% 0x64 = 100%
Status.RetainMemoryIEC. Usage.Percent	Byte	The "RetainMemoryUsage" parameter indicates the complete re- tain memory usage of the device as a percentage. 0% 100% 0x64 = 100%
Status.Board.Temperature.Centigrade	Int32	The "BoardTemperature" parameter indicates the temperature of the interior of the device in °C.
Status.Board.Humidity	Byte	The "BoardHumidity" parameter indicates the relative humidity in the device. 0% 100%
Status.Cpu.Temperature.Centigrade	Int32	The "CPUTemperature" parameter indicates the temperature of the processor in °C (only for RFC 4072S).
Status.KeySwitch.Position	Byte	 The "KeySwitch" parameter indicates the position of the run/stop switch (only for RFC 4072S controller). 0: Switch in stop position 1: Switch in run position
Status.RamDisk.{RamDiskIndex}. Usage.Percent	Byte	The parameter indicates the memory usage of the RAM disc(s) as a percentage (only for RFC 4072S controller). 0% 100% RamDiskIndex = 1, 2, Number of the RAM disc (currently, only one RAM disc is supported, so that the index is always 1)
Status.RamDisk.{RamDiskIndex}. Usage	UInt32	The parameter indicates the absolute memory usage of the RAM disc(s) (only for RFC 4072S controller). RamDiskIndex = 1, 2,Number of the RAM disc (currently, only one RAM disc is supported, so that the index is always 1)

You can also call status information on the LED states via the "IDeviceStatusService" interface.

The colors of the LEDs are represented as follows, normally in the high word (HW) of the return value:

public enum LedColor : ushort
{

Green = 1,

```
Yellow = 2,
Red = 4
```

};

The states of the LEDs is represented as follows, normally in the low word (LW) of the return value:

```
public enum LedStates : ushort
{
    Off = 0,
    On = 1,
    Flashing_0_5_Hz = 2,
    Flashing_2_Hz = 3,
    Alternating_0_5_Hz = 4,
    Alternating_2_Hz = 5
}
```

Table 5-6 LEDs of the IEC runtime	system
-----------------------------------	--------

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.Leds.Runtime.Run	UInt32	Runtime RUN LED (HW = color, LW = status)
Status.Leds.Runtime.Fail	UInt32	Runtime FAIL LED (HW = color, LW = status)
Status.Leds.Runtime.Debug	UInt32	Runtime DEBUG LED (HW = color, LW = status)

Table 5-7Axioline LEDs

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.Leds.Axio.D	UInt32	AXIO master D LED (HW = color, LW = status)
Status.Leds.Axio.E	UInt32	AXIO master E LED (HW = color, LW = status)

Table 5-8 PROFINET LEDs

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.Leds.Pnio.Bf_C	UInt32	Pnio controller BF LED (HW = color, LW = status)
Status.Leds.Pnio.Bf_D	UInt32	Pnio device BF LED (HW = color, LW = status)
Status.Leds.Pnio.Sf	UInt32	Pnio controller SF LED (HW = color, LW = status)

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

You can also call status information on the network states via the "IDeviceStatusService" interface:

 Table 5-9
 Network interface

Parameter	Data type	Description
Status.Interfaces.Ethernet. {adapterIndex}.{port}Baudrate	Byte	The "Interface Baudrate" parameter indicates the current speed of the interface. 1: 10 Mbps 2: 100 Mbps 3: 1000 Mbps adapterIndex = 1, 2, port = 1, 2,
Status.Interfaces.Ethernet. {adapterIndex}.{port}.Duplex	Byte	The "Interface Duplex Mode" parameter indicates the current du- plex mode of the interface. 1: Half duplex 2: Full duplex adapterIndex = 1, 2, port = 1, 2,
Status.Interfaces.Ethernet. {adapterIndex}.{port}.Link	Byte	The "Interface Link Status" parameter indicates the link status of the interface. 0: linkDown 1: linkUp adapterIndex = 1, 2, port = 1, 2,

5.8.4 RSC GDS services



Please note that execution of RSC services can take some time. For this reason, avoid direct calls from ESM tasks.

5.8.4.1 "IDataAccessService"

During runtime, the internal user components have read and write access to the GDS data. The service enables asynchronous reading and writing of one or more ports or even internal variables. For this process, you need the name of the port(s) that is/are to be read. The data read can be written to a database, for example.

You need the following header to use the "IDataAccessService" service. If necessary, include it via the **#include** command:

Arp/Plc/Gds/Services/IDataAccessService.hpp

Service functions for direct data access:

- Read(): This function is used to read the values of the variable addresses passed on.
- ReadSingle(): This function is used to read the value of the variable address passed on. Only simple variables are supported (no arrays or structures).
- Write(): This function is used to write the values passed on to the variables of the variable address passed on.
- WriteSingle(): This function is used to write the value passed on to the variables of the variable address passed on. Only simple variables are supported (no arrays or structures).

ReadItem ReadSingle(const RscString<512>& portName)

Read(ReadPortNamesDelegate portNamesDelegate, ReadResultDelegate resultDelegate) DataAccessError WriteSingle(const WriteItem& data) Write(WriteDataDelegate dataDelegate, WriteResultDelegate resultDelegate)

Each port has a unique name within the GDS that is made up as described in Section "GDS configuration using configuration files" on page 34. You need the complete name (URI) of a

port in order to address it. The following port addresses are valid, for example:

- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Variable_Name
- ComponentName-1/Global_Variable_Name
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Array_Variable_Name
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Array_Variable_Name[index]
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Array_Variable_Name[startIndex:endIndex]
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Struct_Variable_Name.Element1.Leaf
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Struct_Variable_Name.Element1.LeafArray
- ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Struct_Variable_Name.Element1. LeafArray[index]

The following variable types can be read and written:

- Primitive
- DateTime
- StaticString
- lecString
- Enum
- Struct
- Pointer
- Array

5.8.4.2 "ISubscriptionService"

The "ISubscriptionService" offers an alternative to the read functions of "IDataAccessService". The variables of which the values are to be read are only registered once and can then be read continuously. The data can be read more rapidly, and, due to the elimination of variable addressing, also recorded consistently with the task cycle. All variables in the same ESM task are recorded in the same cycle (with the exception of the "DirectRead" subscription type). In addition, "ISubscriptionService" provides time stamps that can be used to assign a clear recording time to each value.

To use the "ISubscriptionService" class, you require the following header file which was declared in the "Arp::Plc::Gds::Services" namespace:

<pre>#include</pre>	"Arp/Plc/Gds	/Services/ISub	oscriptionService	.hpp"
---------------------	--------------	----------------	-------------------	-------

٠

If necessary, include it via the **#include** command.

Below you will find a description of how to create, start, and read a subscription.

 Creating a subscription
 First, you have to create a subscription.

 •
 To create a subscription, use the following function of the "ISubscriptionService":

uint32 CreateSubscription(SubscriptionKind kind)

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

With this function, the type of the desired subscription is passed on. Select one of the following four types:

Туре	Description
"DirectRead"	The "DirectRead" subscription records the values directly when the ReadValues() function is called within the context of the thread to be called. The "HighPerformance", "RealTime", and "Recording" subscription types collect the values within the context of the assigned ESM task. The data is read directly from the respective variable. A copy process is only implemented if data is also queried. The read data can originate from different task cycles.
	This subscription can deliver the best performance with the lowest impact on real time.
	Possible use: Asynchronous data acquisition of non-time-critical data.
"HighPerformance"	The "HighPerformance" subscription uses a double buffer which contains the last written data of a variable. The buffer enables almost simultaneous writing and reading of data.
	The "HighPerformance" type is consistent with the task cycle. It uses the least memory and shows the least impact on real time (compared with the "RealTime" and "Recording Subscription" types).
	Possible use: Standard type for acquiring data.
"RealTime"	The "RealTime" subscription uses a quad buffer which contains the last written data of a variable. The buffer minimizes access times during reading and writing.
	The "RealTime" type is consistent with the task cycle. It guarantees fast data access but re- quires four times the amount of memory.
	Possible use: The subscription is suitable for variables running in very fast tasks and if fast access to read files is required.
"Recording"	The "Recording" subscription uses a ring buffer that can store several data items of a variable. This type is consistent with the task cycle and has a low impact on real time. However, depend- ing on the ring size, it requires a lot of memory. By default, the ring size is set to 10. It can be configured if the CreateRecordingSubscription() function is used instead of CreateSubscription() .
	Possible use: The subscription is suitable for variables running in tasks that are faster than the task of the user but the user still needs all values.

Table 5-10	Subscription types

Adding variables

• Add the desired variables to the subscription by calling one of the following functions:

DataAccessError AddVariable(uint32 subscriptionId, const RscString<512>& variableName)

or

void AddVariables(uint32 subscriptionId, AddVariablesVariableNamesDelegate variableNamesDelegate, AddVariablesResultDelegate resultDelegate); Both functions can be called repeatedly for the same subscription. As with "IDataAccessService", the variables are addressed via their complete name. Some examples are shown in the following table:

Table 5-11Examples of variable addressing

Variable addressing	Description
ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1.Variable_Name	Program variable
ComponentName-1/Global_Variable_Name	Component variable (global variable)
ComponentName-1/ProgramName-1:Array_Variable_Name[index]	Array element
ComponentName-1/ProgramName- 1:Struct_Variable_Name.Element1.Leaf	Structure element (leaf)
ComponentName-1/ProgramName- 1:Struct_Variable_Name.Element1.LeafArray[index]	Array element from a structure
ComponentName-1/ProgramName- 1:Array_Variable_Name[startIndex:endIndex]	An extract of array elements

Once a variable was added successfully to the subscription, the

DataAccessError::None value is returned. In case of an error, the following return values might be returned:

Name	Description
None	No error
NotExists	The variable does not exist in the system.
NotAuthorized	The user does not have sufficient authorization.
TypeMismatch	During writing, the value type is not suitable for the respective port.
PortNameSyntaxError	The port address is syntactically incorrect.
PortNameSemanticError	The port address is semantically incorrect.
IndexOutOfRange	The address contains an array index that is outside the array.
NotImplemented	The variable or service function has not yet been imple- mented.
NotSupported	The variable is not supported.
CurrentlyUnavailable	The service is currently unavailable.
UnvalidSubscription	The specified subscription was not found or is invalid.

Table 5-12 Return values in the event of an error

The following types are currently supported:

- Primitive
- DateTime
- String (currently, only StaticString and lecString are supported)
- StaticString
- lecString
- Enum
- Struct
- Pointer
- Array

Subscribe/unsubscribe	Once you created a subscription and configured it with variables, you can activate it with Subscribe.
	 To activate the subscription, call the following service function:
DataAccessError Subscribe	(uint32 subscriptionId, uint64 sampleRate);
	With call of the function, copying of the variable starts (exception: for the "DirectRead" type, no data is automatically recorded).
	Use the sampleRate parameter to indicate in which time grid the values are to be recorded. The sampleRate can only be a multiple of the interval time of a cyclic ESM task. If a sampleRate that does not correspond to this interval time is passed on, the "SubscriptionValue" rounds the value to the next faster value.
	 Example: Variables from task A and task B are to be recorded: Interval time for task A: 10 ms Interval time for task B: 8 ms
	 If you specify 50 ms for sampleRate, the following is actually recorded: Variables from task A at 50 ms (every fifth cycle) Variables from task B at 48 ms (every sixth cycle)
	If you specify value 0 for sampleRate, all the data is recorded in the interval of the respective task.
	 Variables from task A at 10 ms
	 Variables from task B at 8 ms
	When a subscription was started, you can pause it via Unsubscribe.For this, call the following service function:
DataAccessError Unsubscri	be(uint subscriptionId);
	If a subscription pauses, no new data is recorded. Existing data is available in the subscription.
	To restart recording, call Subscribe again.
GetVariableInfos	This service function shows which variables are currently recorded. Therefore, the function only returns information once Subscribe is called.
	The function only returns information about variable sorting. This information is decisive for reading the data. Each subscription internally sorts the variables, e.g., by assignment to the ESM task. The data of added variables is therefore not read in the order in which is was added. The "Read" functions only provide the raw values of the variables but do not give information on which variable the value is assigned to. At this point, service function information is returned in the same order as data for the "Read" functions. Therefore, variable information has to be read before the "Read" functions of a subscription are called for the first time.
	A matching "Info" function is available for each "Read" function.To query all currently recorded variables, call the following function:
DataAccessError GetVariab variableInfoDelegate);	leInfos(uint32 subscriptionId, GetVariableInfosVariableInfoDelegate
	To query the data, call the associated "Read" function:
DataAccessError ReadValue valuesDelegate)	s(uint32 subscriptionId, ReadTimeStampedValuesValuesDelegate
	 If, in addition to the variable values, you also require the time stamps of value acquisi- tion, call the following function:
--	--
	tTimeStampedVariableInfos(uint32 subscriptionId, ableInfosVariableInfoDelegate variableInfoDelegate)
	Information on time stamps is returned in addition to information on the variables. A variable with the name "timestamp" and of the "Arp.Plc.DataType.Int64" data type is always returned as the first element of an ESM task. This is followed by all information of the variable that is associated with the ESM task and can be assigned to the time stamp. If there are variables of several ESM tasks in the subscription, an additional time stamp is returned for each task, which is followed by the associated information. Here, information is also returned in the same order as the data that is returned with the following "Read" function:
DataAccessError Ge recordInfosDelegat	tRecordInfos(uint32 subscriptionId, GetRecordInfosRecordInfosDelegate e);
ReadValues	Once you have started the recording of a subscription, you can query the acquired data. Different "Read" functions are available for this. The "Read" functions only return the variable values. The values are not assigned to the respective variable. For assigning the values to the respective variables, you have to call the corresponding "Info" function once (see Section "GetVariableInfos" on page 144).
	The following "Read" service functions are available:
DataAccessError Re valuesDelegate)	adValues(uint32 subscriptionId, ReadTimeStampedValuesValuesDelegate
	This function returns all the values in a static order. The GetVariableInfos() function is used for assigning the variables.
	Example:
	 Added variables from task A: a1, a2
	 Added variables from task B: b1
	ReadValues:
	Object[]
	a2 a1 b1
	The following function returns all the values in a static order, including the associated time stamps:
DataAccessError Re valuesDelegate);	adTimeStampedValues(uint32 subscriptionId, ReadTimeStampedValuesValuesDelegate
	The time stamps are always located before the associated variable values. The number of time stamps always corresponds to the number of ESM tasks the variables originate from. By means of the "DateTime" class, which is defined in the Arp namespace and in the Arp/System/Core/DateTime.hpp header file, the value of the "timestamp" variable can be converted into a time stamp. The GetVariableInfos() function is used for assigning the variables.

Example:

- Added variables from task A: a1, a2
- Added variables from task B: b1

ReadValues: Object[] Timestamp task A a2 a1 Timestamp task B b1

The following function returns all the values packed in records:

DataAccessError ReadRecords(uint32 subscriptionId, uint16 count, ReadRecordsRecordsDelegate recordsDelegate);

A record, also called data record, only contains the variable data from an ESM task and the associated time stamp. The time stamp is always located before the associated variable values. The variable order is always static and does not change during operation. An ESM task record is created for each ESM task. It contains all the corresponding data records of the respective ESM task. Depending on the subscription configuration, an ESM task record can contain several data records.

E.g.: A subscription of the "Recording" type with a task interval of 100 ms and a capacity of 10 returns 10 data records after one second. The time stamps are 100 ms apart. However, a subscription of the "HighPerformance", "RealTime", or "DirectRead" type always returns one data record only. By means of the "Read" function, you can read all the subscription data of the "Recording" type at once.

In addition to the static order of variables in the data records, the order of the ESM task records is static, too. By means of the GetTimeStampedVariableInfos() function, each value can be assigned a variable. The variable information describes exactly the first ESM task record and all the data records contained therein, from the first time stamp to the final variable information associated with this time stamp.

By means of the "DateTime" class, which is defined in the Arp namespace and in the Arp/System/Core/DateTime.hpp header file, the value of the "timestamp" variable in the respective data records can be converted into a time stamp.

Example:

- Added variables from task A: a1, a2
- Added variables from task B: b1
- Task A recorded 2 records.
- Task B recorded 1 record.

ReadRecords:

```
Object[] (ESM task records)
Objects[] (ESM task record A)
Objects[](data record cycle 1)
Timestamp
a2
a1
```

```
Objects[](data record cycle 2)
```

	Timestamp a2	
	a1	
	Objects[] (ESM task r	ecord B)
	Objects[](data rec	ord cycle 1)
	Timestamp b1	
Changing a subcription	You can modify two things of – The sampling interval the – The variables that are to	e subscription used to record data.
	The subscription type can on	y be changed if you delete the subscription and create it again.
	To change the sample rate, p	
	 Stop the subscription by Execute the subscription parameter. 	calling Unsubscribe. by calling Subscribe and entering the new sample rate as the
		le for changing the variables to be recorded: a subscription, call the following function:
DataAccessError RemoveVa	able(uint32 subscription	nId, const RscString<512>& variableName),
	• To add a variable to a su	bscription, call the following function:
DataAccessError AddVaria	le(uint32 subscriptionId	, const RscString<512>& variableName)
	To add several variables	to a subscription, call the following function:
void AddVariables(uin variableNamesDelegate, Ad		riablesVariableNamesDelegate resultDelegate);
	cording. To apply the change	uring operation and also to a subscription that is currently re- es, execute Resubscribe . e, call the following service function:
DataAccessError Resubscr:	e(uint32 subscriptionI	, uint64 sampleRate);
	Once Resubscribe was calle memories are rebuilt, data ca	ed, the changes are applied to the subscription. As the internal In be lost.
Deleting a subscription		equired, you have to delete it. If you do not delete the subscrip- ne next restart of the PLC application (warm or cold restart).
	To delete a subscription, call	the following function:
DataAccessError DeleteSu	cription(uint32 subscri	ptionId)
	The internally reserved mem	ory is enabled and the subscription ID becomes invalid.
	5.9 Notification	S

The notification manager is used for registering, sending and receiving notifications between components of a controller. The header files required for using the notification manager are provided via the PLCnext Technology SDK (see Section 6.1, "PLCnCLI (PLCnext

Defining user data	Command Line Interface)"). The SDK contains classes for the Notification manager, classes as a basis for user-defined user data (payload), as well as the payload classes of the PLCnext Technology firmware. If you want to use a class, integrate it into your program via an #include command, (e.g., #include <arp nm="" notificationmanager.hpp="" system="">). Further information on the classes and their applications is available directly in the code commentary. To enable correct interpretation of the user data of a notification, the structure has to be de- fined. Use template class "Arp/System/Nm/SpecializedPayload.hpp" for this. User data with up to 50 fields can be used as a character string.</arp>
	Example code with two fields:
<pre>// Example payload with</pre>	two payload fields
<pre>#include "Arp/System/Nm/</pre>	SpecializedPayload.hpp"
	template parameter for SpecializedPayload
<pre>class UserLoggedInPayloa : public Arp::System { public:</pre>	a :::Nm::SpecializedPayload <userloggedinpayload></userloggedinpayload>
<pre>// Inherit base clas using SpecializedPay</pre>	s constructors load::SpecializedPayload;
<pre>// This constructor // a notification is // function to send // Pass a format str</pre>	ing for a user visible representation of the payload to the base r. This format string will be used by the NotificationLogger to
UserLoggedInPayload(: SpecializedPayload { // Store the val this->SetFieldva	const String& username, const String& permissions) ("User logged in: {0} (permissions={1})") ues of the parameters in the underlying payload data structure ulue(this->fieldIndexUsername, username); ulue(this->fieldIndexPermissions, permissions);
}	type-safe access to the payload fields
{ return this->Get }	FieldValueAs <string>(this->fieldIndexUsername);</string>
String GetPermission	us() const
return this->GetFiel }	dValueAs <string>(this->fieldIndexPermissions);</string>
<pre>// The type infomati // payload fields. // Use direct member // when the inherite</pre>	of the payload type. Each field is accessed by an index. on is used to ensure only valid information is set to the intialization here to ensure these members are also intialized d constructors are used. e declarations matters, so don't change them.

```
const size t fieldIndexUsername = this->AddField<String>();
     const size t fieldIndexPermissions = this->AddField<String>();
};
Registering and sending
                               Before a notification can be sent, it must be registered with the Notification manager. If a
notifications
                               component that registered a notification is no longer available, it has to unregister the noti-
                               fication first. Both processes are implemented using the "Notification Registration Proxy Ob-
                              ject".
                               Example:
// in UserManager
NotificationManager& nm= NotificationManager::GetInstance();
auto UserLoggedInRegistration = nm.CreateNotificationRegistration<UserLoggedInPayload>(
     "Arp.System.Um.Login", "UserManager", Severity::Info);
UserLoggedInRegistration.SendNotification("hans", "admin");
// notification is deregistered automatically in destructor of UserLoggedInRegistration
Metadata of a notification
                              To register a notification, the sender must specify metadata information:
                                   notificationName:
                                   The notification name defines under which name the notification is published. The parts
                                   of a name are separated by "." and should correspond, up to the component level, to
                                   the name of the component to be sent, e.g., "Arp.System.Um.UserLogin",
                                   "Arp.Plc.Domain.PlcStateChanged".
                                  senderName:
                                   The name of the component sending the notification.
                                  Severity:
                                   Information on the severity of the notification. Processing is not affected by the severity.
                                   - Info: General information
                                      Warning: Warning for the user

    Error: Error without serious impact

    Critical: Error with medium impact

                                       Fatal: Error with serious impact
                                   _
                                  PayloadTypeId:
                                   Unique identification for the user data type.
                               ⇒ The NotificationNameId is returned:
                                   The ID is used to for identify an instance of a notification. It is required for sending and
                                   unregistering a notification.
                               The status of a notification registration can have the following states:
                                   Subscribed: A recipient subscribed but has not yet been registered by a component.
                                   Subscribing to a notification that has not yet been registered or has again been unreg-
                                   istered is only possible during startup of the firmware and startup of the controller. Oth-
                                   erwise, an exception will be triggered.
                                  Registered: Registered by a component
                                  Unregistered: Unregistered by a component
                               _
                               The GetNotificationRegistration() method returns the above meta information about
                               a notification.
```

```
Receiving notifications
                              To receive notifications, the recipient must subscribe to the notification name with the
                              Notification manager. The NotificatiaonSubscriber object is used for receiving notifications.
                              If a recipient is no longer to receive notifications, it has to unsubscribe from theses notifica-
                              tions. To make sure that this is done at the end of the recipient's life cycle, it is recommended
                              to use a proxy object like the one described for registering of notifications.
                              Example:
// in eHMI
void HandleUserLogins(const Notification& notification)
{
    auto payload = notification.GetPayloadAs<UserLoggedInPayload>();
    // do something with payload.GetUsername() and payload.GetPermissions()
// in some long living object of eHMI
NotificationManager& nm = NotificationManager::GetInstance();
auto UserLoggedIn = nm.CreateNotificationSubscriber("Arp.System.Um.Login");
UserLoggedIn.OnNotification += make_delegate(HandleUserLogins);
// notification is unsubscribed automatically in destructor of UserLoggedIn
Querving information
                              The INotificationManagerInfo interface is the interface for querying information about the
                              NotificationManager. The following options are available:
                              _
                                  GetNotificationName(): This method returns the notification name.
                                 GetNotificationNameId(): This method returns the ID of a notification name.
                                  GetNotificationRegistration(): This method returns the information about a noti-
                                  fication made available during registration (see Section "Metadata of a notification" on
                                  page 149.)
```

```
    GetAllKnownNotificationNameIds(): This method returns a list of
NotificationNameIds of all known notifications, independent of their status.
```

- GetNotificationsNameIdsByStatus(): This method returns a list of NotificationNameIds of notifications with a specific status.

6 Creating programs with C++

With PLCnext Technology, you can also use programs created with C++ in the real-time context of a PLC along with conventional IEC 61131-3 programs. To use programs and program parts created in C++ within the scope of PLCnext Technology, you need a Software Development Kit (SDK).

With the PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface), Phoenix Contact provides you with a tool featuring the following:

- Administration of the SDKs
- Build environment
- Automatic generation of required metadata and configurations
- Automatic creation of the completed library
- Extensive toolchain based on a console

The PLCnCLI is based on the .NET Core Framework and can be used on Windows and Linux operating systems.

You can use the freely available Eclipse[®] software with the Phoenix Contact add-in for Eclipse[®] as the C++ development environment. The add-in allows for easy connection to the PLCnext Technology platform and provides the PLCnCLI functions in Eclipse[®].

6.1 PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface)

The PLCnCLI (in the following also "CLI") provides the entire toolchain for C++ programming on the PLCnext Technology platform as well as a template system for creating projects. Based on the templates, you can develop your applications. Use the CLI to unpack and manage the SDKs. CMake is contained as the build environment and each SDK has its own configuration. A parser integrated in PLCnCLI creates the metadata required for PLCnext Technology. The LibraryBuilder contained in PLCnCLI creates a PLCnext Engineer library from the project.



The use of the Eclipse[®] add-in requires the installation of PLCnCLI (Section "Installing PLCnCLI" on page 152) as well as the installation of one or several SDKs (Section "Installing SDKs" on page 152). For information on using the Eclipse[®] add-in, please refer to Section "Eclipse[®] add-in" on page 156.

6.1.1 System requirements

- Before starting the installation, ensure that the system requirements are met.
- Download the necessary software.

Operating system

The PLCnCLI was tested and released for the following operating systems:

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 10
- Linux (Ubuntu 18.04.1.LTS)

Phoenix Contact software

	 PLCnCLI (PLCnext Command Line Interface): The CLI is a command line interface. It can be used, e.g., for generating metadata, C++ header files, PLCnext Engineer libraries, and for adding IN and OUT ports. The func- tions can be called using simple commands. An integrated help lists the commands and describes their functions.
	 PLCnext Technology SDK:
	An SDK contains all of the important toolchains and libraries required for creating a pro- gram. The SDK is installed via the CLI (see Section 6.1.3).
	PLCnCLI and PLCnext Technology SDK are available in the download area of your control- ler at phoenixcontact.net/products.
	Some sample applications programmed in C++ can be found at <u>https://github.com/plcnext</u> .
	6.1.2 Installing PLCnCLI
Installing in Windows	Run the installation file.
	Follow the instructions of the installation wizard.
	Phoenix Contact recommends to add the installation directory to the "Path" variable in the environment variables.
Installing in Linux	 The following packages are required for installation in Linux: "xz-utils" Required for SDK installation. "python3" Required for SDK installation. "build-essential" The package contains the major part of the toolchain required for C++ programming, e.g., "make". "libunwind8" The "EngineeringLibraryBuilder" requires this library. "sshpass_1.06-1_amd64.deb" Is used by the debug script.
	To check if the packages were installed or are being installed, enter the following command:
	 sudo apt-get install xz-utils python3 build-essential libunwind8 Then, run the "PLCnCLI_Setup.sh" file. Read and accept the "Software License Terms".
	You will then receive a folder named "plcncli" to which the PLCnCLI was unpacked. Like for Windows, Phoenix Contact recommends to introduce the "Executable" file to simplify call- ing the file in the console.
	For this, enter the following command:
	<pre>ln -s [Path to the PLCnCLI installation folder]/plcncli /usr/ local/bin/plcncli</pre>
	<pre>E.g.: ln -s /home/plcncli/plcncli /usr/local/bin/plcncli</pre>
	6.1.3 Installing SDKs
	Download the SDK that is suitable for your controller from the download area of your

controller at phoenixcontact.net/products.

	 Unpack the .zip file. Call the CLI in the console using the following command: plcncli.exe install sdk -d [Installation path] -p [Path to archive file] E.g.: plcncli.exe install sdk -d C:\CLI\SDKs\AXCF2152\2019_0\ -p C:\CLI\pxc-glibc-x86_64-axcf2152-image-mingw-cortexa9t2hf-neon- toolchain-2019.0.tar.xz If you install several SDKs, Phoenix Contact recommends to use the "target name/firmware version" folder structure. Installing an SDK using the PLCnCLI automatically makes the in- stallation known to the CLI. 		
Introducing an SDK	 To introduce already unpacked SDKs to the CLI, enter the following command: plcncli.exe set setting -a SdkPaths [Path to SDK] E.g.: plcncli.exe set setting -a SdkPaths C:\CLI\SDKs\AXCF2152\2019_0\ To receive a list of all available settings and the set values, enter the following command: plcncli.exe get setting -a 		
Uninstalling an SDK	 To uninstall an SDK, enter the following command: plcncli.exe set setting -r [Path to SDK] The uninstalled SDK is removed from the PLCnCLI, but will be retained in the directory system. 6.1.4 Functions of the PLCnCLI 		
CLI features	 You can execute many functions directly using the Command Line Interface (CLI). The CLI provides the following features, which you can call by means of simple commands: Creating projects Managing SDKs Generating metafiles (*.progmeta, *.compmeta, *.libmeta) Generating C++ frames and header files Compiling with CMake Creating PLCnext Engineer libraries for several controllers and firmware versions 		
CLI command structure	 Use the Command Line Interface to call functions by means of simple commands. Activate the CLI by calling the plcncli.exe via the shell, e.g., C:\CLI\plcncli.exe. 		

There is a long and a short form for the commands, which you can use as you like:

Long form:

• To add the parameters, prefix "--". E.g.: new project --name MyProject1

C:\CLI>plcncli.exe new project --name MyProject1 Successfully created template 'Project' in C:\CLI\MyProject1.

Short form:

To add the parameters, prefix "-".
 E.g.: new project -n MyProject1

C:\CLI>plcncli new project -n MyProject1 Successfully created template 'Project' in C:\CLI\MyProject1.

The functions are structured hierarchically. For each command, there is another level of commands that specifies the desired function in more detail. Use the --help command to call a description of the individual functions.

E.g.: new project --help

PS C:\CLI> <mark>plcncli</mark> new projecthelp plcncli 2019.0 LTS (19.0.0.728) Copyright (c) 2018 PHOENIX CONTACT GmbH & Co. KG				
-n,name	Name of the project.			
-o,output	Absolute path or relative path to the directory of the project.			
-s,namespace	The root namespace for the project. It is used to resolve the inital component and program namespace.			
-c,component	The name of the component which will be automatically created.			
-p,program	The name of the program which will be automatically created.			
-f,force	Overrides existing files when encountered.			
verbose	Enables verbose output.			
help	Display this help screen.			
Examples:				
creates a new project in the directory 'ProjectName' with the component 'ProjectNameComponent', the program 'ProjectNameProgram' both in the namespace 'ProjectName':				
plcncli new projectname ProjectName				
creates a new project in the directory 'ProjectName' with the component 'SomeComponent', the program 'SomeProgram' both in the namespace 'SomeNamespace':				
nlengli nau project	name DuojectName component ComeComponent program			

plcncli new project --name ProjectName --component SomeComponent --program SomeProgram --namespace SomeNamespace

Figure 6-1 Description of functions

If you do not specify all the parameters, the system will use default parameters. The values will be displayed after the command was executed.

If you do not specify a directory path via the **--path** option, e.g., when creating a project, a subfolder is created and used in the current directory.

CLI command overview The CLI provides the following commands, which you can use to execute the corresponding functions. To call a command, enter it in the command line after the plcncli.exe call. E.g., C:\CLI\plcncli.exe new...:

Table 6-1 CLI command overview

Command	Meaning
build	Compile a project
generate	Generate libraries, metafiles and code files
get	Query information about projects, controllers, etc.
set	Make settings, e.g., select a controller
update	Update of controllers in the current project
install	Install SDK
new	Create new files/projects
help	Call additional information about a specific command
version	Show version information

Each command can be specified using additional parameters. Commands consist of the following:

CLI call	Level 1	Level 2	Level 3
C:\plcncli.exe	new	project	-n orname

If you require information on parameters or additional command levels, you can request them for each level by means of the --help command.

Example: Configuring a project

The following example shows an option of how to configure a project up to the complete PLCnext library using the CLI:

- Open a project folder of your choice: e.g., C:\Users\<username>\Documents\CLI Projects.
- Generate a new project with the project name "Project1": \CLI\Plcncli.exe new project -n Project1
- Go to the "Project1" project folder: cd Project1
- Select the desired controller for the project (e.g., AXC F 2152): plcncli.exe set targets --add -n AXCF2152
- Use the following command to generate the necessary metafiles for the project: \CLI\plcncli.exe generate config
- Use the following command to generate the necessary code files for the project: \CLI\plcncli.exe generate code
- You can also generate metafiles and code files in only one step: \CLI\plcncli.exe generate all
- Compile the project.:
 \CLI\plcncli.exe build

Importing the library	 Generate a library: \CLI\plcncli.exe generate library The library and the .so files are located in the "bin" folder of the project. For additional information on programming the code, please refer to Section 5, "Structure of a C++ program". You can then import the generated library in PLCnext Engineer, see Section 9, "Importing libraries into PLCnext Engineer". 			
	6.2 Eclipse [®] add-in The Eclipse [®] add-in for PLCnext C++ programming enables you to use the PLCnCLI func- tions from you familiar C++ development environment.			
	6.2.1 Requirements			
Installing Eclipse [®]	 Phoenix Contact recommends the Eclipse[®] CDT Photon (9.5.2) development environment. Download the Eclipse[®] CDT Photon (9.5.2) software with the "Eclipse IDE for C/C++ Developers" package from <u>https://www.eclipse.org</u>. Copy and unpack the files to any folder. You can execute Eclipse[®] right away. 			
•	The Java [™] Runtime Environment is required for the Eclipse [®] development environment. If an error with "error code 13" occurs when Java is started, check if the correct Java version is installed. If you use a 64-bit Eclipse version, you have to use a 64-bit Java version.			
Installing PLCnCLI	 Install the PLCnext Command Line Interface according to the information in Section 6.1.2, "Installing PLCnCLI". 			
Installing SDKs	• Install the SDKs according to the information in Section 6.1.3, "Installing SDKs".			
	6.2.2 Installing/updating/uninstalling the Eclipse [®] add-in			
Installing the add-in	 If necessary, uninstall earlier add-in versions (see "Uninstalling the add-in" on page 158). Start Eclipse[®]. 			

Open the "Help, Install New Software..." menu.

Help

Welcome

?	Help Contents	
22	Search	
	Show Contextual Help	
	Show Active Keybindings Ctrl+S	hift+L
8	Tips and Tricks	
æ	Report Bug or Enhancement	
	Cheat Sheets	
۹	Eclipse User Storage	+
~2	Perform Setup Tasks	
e Se	Check for Updates	
₽.	Install New Software	
4	Eclipse Marketplace	
\odot	Arduino Downloads Manager	
٢	About Eclipse IDE	
+	Contribute	

Figure 6-2 "Help, Install New Software..." menu

- To select the path to the directory of the add-in, click on "Add" in the "Install" dialog (see Figure 6-3).
- In the "Add Repository" dialog, click on "Archive" and select the archive of the add-in.

You will find it in the installation folder of the $\ensuremath{\mathsf{PLCnCLI}}$ under

.../ide-plugins/com.phoenixcontact.plcnext.updatesite.zip.

• Enter a name of your choice in the "Name" input field and confirm with "Add".

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

	•	Disable t	he "Contact all up	odate sites during ir	nstall to find r	equired softw	vare" check box.
🖨 Install							- 🗆 X
Available Software							
Check the items that you wish to	o install.						
Work with: PLCnCLI - jar:file:/C:/	Program Fil	les/PHOENIX CO	ONTACT/PLCnCLI 2019.	0 LTS/ide-plugins/com.ph	oenixcontact ~	Add	Manage
type filter text							Select All
Name V IIII PLCnext Technology V I All items are installed	ed			Version			Deselect All
	🖨 Add F	Repository				×	
	<u>N</u> ame:	PLCnCLI			L <u>o</u> cal		
	Location:	LTS/ide-plugi	ns/com.phoenixcontac	t.plcnext.updatesite.zipl	Archive		
	?				Canad		
Details	Ø			A <u>d</u> d	Cancel		
							0
Show only software applicable	-		ftware				
0				< Back	Next >	Finish	Cancel
	F	igure 6-3	"Install" dialog				
	• • •	Read an Click "Fir	the "Next" button d accept the licer hish" to complete Eclipse [®] .	nce agreements.			
Jpdating the add-in	•	To updat on page		dd-in, proceed as d	lescribed in S	Section "Insta	alling the add-in'
Uninstalling the add-in	•	Open the	e "Help, About Ec	lipse IDE" menu.			

•	Click on the "Installation Details	" button.
Help		
8	Welcome	
? ??	Help Contents Search Show Contextual Help	
8、 #	Show Active Keybindings Ctrl+Shift+L Tips and Tricks Report Bug or Enhancement Cheat Sheets	
ک کی کی	Eclipse User Storage Perform Setup Tasks Check for Updates	Installation Details
é.	Install New Software	<u> </u>
<u> </u>	Eclipse Marketplace	
\odot	Arduino Downloads Manager	
⊜ ★	About Eclipse IDE Contribute	

Figure 6-4 "Help, About Eclipse IDE" menu

Select the earlier add-in versions and uninstall them. •

Creating a new C++ project in Eclipse® 6.2.3

This section describes how to create a new C++ project in Eclipse[®].

Open the "File, New, Project..." menu. •

File Edit Source Refactor Navigate Search Project Run Window Help New Alt+Shift+N Image: Comparison of the system of the s	🖨 e	clipse-workspace - Eclipse IDE						
Open File Image: Content of the system	File	File Edit Source Refactor Navigate Search Project Run Window Help						
Open Projects from File System C/C++ Project		New	Alt+Shift+N ▶	C++	Arduino Project			
		Open File		C++	Makefile Project with Existing Code			
		Open Projects from File System		C [®]	C/C++ Project			
Recent Files		Recent Files	•	D	Project			

Figure 6-5 Creating a new project

The "New Project" window opens (see Figure 6-6).

Select the "PLCnext C++ Project" wizard from the selection list. ٠

• Confirm your selection with "Next".

New Project					
Select a wizard					Ď
Wizards:					
type filter text					
 General C/C++ PLCnext Tech PLCnext C RPM Tracing Examples 					
?	< Back	Next >	Fini	sh	Cancel

- Enter a project name in the "Project name" input field.
- In the "Toolchains" area, select the "PLCnext C++ Toolchain" entry.

• Confirm with "Next".

C++ Project
New PLCnext C++ Project Create a new PLCnext C++ Project
Project name: FirstProject
Location: C:\Users\pyjp02.EUROPE\eclipse-workspace\FirstProject Browse Choose file system: default
Project type: Toolchains:
Cancel

Figure 6-7 Selecting toolchains

• Enter a name for the program and component in the corresponding input fields.

C++ Project	
PLCnext C++ Pro	
Program name	MyProgram
Component name	MyComponent
Figure 6-8	Entering a name for the program and component

• Select the desired controller and firmware status for the project.

C++ Project		—		×
Supported Targets Select targets to be supported by the	ne project.			Ŷ
Available Targets:	Selected Targe	ts:		
RFC4072S, 19.0.0.17050	Add AXCF2152,19.	0.0.17050		
? < Back	Next > Finish		Cancel	

Figure 6-9 Selecting the controller and firmware status

You can also change the selection of the desired controller and the corresponding firmware status after the project has been created.

- Open the "Project, Properties" menu.
- Select the "PLCnext Targets" option.
- Remove controllers or add new controllers and their firmware version.
- Click the "Finish" button.

You can not start creating the program.

6.2.4 Creating a program

To create a C++ program using Eclipse[®], which can be imported as a library into PLCnext Engineer, you must first prepare a new project in accordance with the description in Section 6.2.3 "Creating a new C++ project in Eclipse[®]".

The created project has a defined structure in which the C++ program is created. Figure 6-10 shows an example.



Figure 6-10 Example structure of a C++ project

To create a program, proceed as follows:

- Open the *.cpp source file.
- Program the code to be executed during each ESM task cycle in the "Execute()" function (see comment //TOD0 implement program).

For additional information on programming in C++, please refer to Section "Structure of a C++ program" on page 116.

After instantiation of a program, the assigned ESM task calls the **Execute()** function of the program instance in each cycle.



Example projects and the associated documentation can be downloaded at https://github.com/plcnext.

6.2.5 Compiling the project

i

Recommended: Make the following setting so that your files are saved automatically before you execute the "Build Project" option:

- In Eclipse[®], open the "Window, Preferences" menu.
- Select "General, Workspace, Build".
- Enable the "Save automatically before build" check box.
- Make this setting separately for each workspace.
- Switch to the "Project Explorer" to compile the project.
- Right-click to open the context menu for the project folder (in the example: "FirstProject1").

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY



In the context menu, click on the "Build Project" option or click on the 🔦 button in the tool bar.

Figure 6-11 "Build Project"

Successful compilation of the project or possible error messages are displayed on the "Console" tab.



Figure 6-12 Example: "Console"



Note regarding compiler warning

For each defined port, you receive the compiler warning: offsetof within non-standard-layout type.

E.g.: [cmake]: /home/user/Workspace/Counters/intermediate/code/Counters Library.meta.cpp:22:47: warning: offsetof within non-standard-layout type 'Counters::CppRetain' is undefined [-Winvalid-offsetof]

You can ignore this warning in conjunction with your defined ports or suppress it using the -wno-invalid-offsetof CMake parameter.

Successful compilation	If compilation was successful, a shared object (*.so) is generated.
Generating a PLCnext Engineer library	To be able to use the program in PLCnext Engineer, you need the pcwlx library, which was generated during compilation. The Library Builder automatically generates the pcwlx library within the framework of compilation ("Build Project"). The files are located in the project folder, e.g., C:/Users/ <username>/eclipse-workspace/FirstProject1/Bin. Import the library within PLCnext Engineer and assign the programs to a task (see Section 9, "Importing li-</username>

6.3 Remote debugging

braries into PLCnext Engineer").

PLCnext Technology has an integrated GDB server. You have the option of setting up a remote debugging session using $Eclipse^{I\!\!R}$.

A description on how to set up a remote debugging session for a running process is available in the <u>PLCnext Community</u>.

Creating function blocks and functions with C# 7

The Visual Studio[®] extension is an extension for the integrated development environment Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®]. The extension allows for using Visual Studio[®] for the development of eCLR firmware libraries in C# and implementing them on PLCnext Technology devices. Furthermore, you can debug the C# code on PLCnext Technology devices.

ProConOS embedded CLR is the open IEC 61131 control runtime system for different automation tasks. The eCLR programming system is structured as follows:





Additional information

In addition to the information in the following sections, further information is available in the online help "eCLR Programming Reference" and the "Readme.txt" text file. Both the online help and the text file are available in every eCLR project in Visual Studio[®].



"eCLR-Programming-Reference.chm" and "Readme.txt"

The eCLR programming system consists of the following components:

CIL compiler	The CIL compiler is responsible for translating the CIL code (CIL = Common Intermediate Language). The eCLR CIL compiler is an ahead-of-time compiler. This means that the CIL code has been fully translated for the platform before being transferred to the controller (more importantly, before execution). This fulfills an essential requirement for the real-time capability of the system. The functional scope of the CIL compiler enables the use of many C # language elements and namespaces of the Base Class Library, which are listed in Section "C# language functions" on page 178.
eCLR core libraries	The core libraries consist of eCLR base class libraries (mscorlib.dll, System.dll, System.Core.dll) and some eCLR-specific libraries (eclrlib.dll, pcoslib.dll). The eCLR base class libraries implement the .NET Framework class libraries. An overview of the supported functions is available in Section "eCLR Base Class Libraries Reference" of the "eCLR Programming Reference" online help (see "Additional information" on page 166).
eCLR runtime	The eCLR runtime executes the compiled IL code on the controller. The runtime is responsible for object and memory management, metadata processing (e.g., for debugging), as well as for the transition of managed API calls to native implementation specific to the operating system. An overview of the eCLR runtime is available in Section "eCLR runtime functions" on page 181.

7.1 Installing the Visual Studio[®] extension

7.1.1 System requirements

• Before starting the installation, ensure that the system requirements are met and download the necessary software.

Operating system

- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 7
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 8.1
- Microsoft[®] Windows[®] 10

Phoenix Contact software

- PLCnext Engineer (Order No. 1046008):

To use the libraries created with C# for PLCnext Technology devices, you need the engineering software platform for automation controllers.

- PLCnext Technology controller with eCLR as of version 2019.0 LTS (e.g., AXC F 2152)
- Visual Studio[®] extension installer

The Visual Studio[®] extension (tools for Visual Studio 2015 for PLCnext Technology C# programming) are available in the download area of your controller or the PLCnext Engineer software (Order No. 1046008) at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>.

C# development environment

 Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®] 2015 and 2017 Versions: Enterprise, Pro, Community

7.1.2 Installation

•

You need the Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®] development environment for programming in C#. The Phoenix Contact extension available for Visual Studio[®] makes it easy to use C# programs in the PLCnext Technology context.

Installing the Visual Studio[®] extension

To install the Visual Studio[®] extension, run the Windows installation program of the Visual Studio[®] extension.

This adds the project and element templates and the debug module to Visual Studio[®].

 Check if installation was successful by opening the "Tools, Extensions and Updates" menu in the Visual Studio[®] development environment.

If the extensions have been successfully installed, they are displayed as shown in Figure 7-3:



Figure 7-3 "Extensions and Updates" menu

Uninstalling the Visual Studio[®] extension

If you want to uninstall the Visual Studio[®] extension, proceed as follows:

- Run the Windows installation program of the Visual Studio[®] extension.
- In the next dialog, select "Remove".

You can also use the Windows $^{\mbox{$^{\circ}$}}$ "Programs and Features" menu to uninstall the Visual Studio $^{\mbox{$^{\circ}$}}$ extension.

- Select the extension from the list.
- Click on "Uninstall".

7.2 Creating a firmware library

With Visual Studio[®] you can create functions and function blocks in C#, which you can subsequently import using the PLCnext Engineer software, and use on a PLCnext Technology device. You first have to create a new project. To do this, proceed as follows:

- In Visual Studio[®], open the "File, New, Project..." menu.
- In the dialog that opens, select "Installed, Templates, Visual C#, PLCnext".
- Select the "Firmware Library" eCLR template from the list.
- Select a storage path and click on "OK".

A new, empty eCLR library project is created.

New Project				? ×
Recent		.NET Framework 4.5.2 • Set	ort by: Default	Search Installed Ter 🔎
 Installed 		Firmware Library	Visual C#	Type: Visual C#
 ✓ Templates ✓ Visual C# ✓ Windows Web .NET Core Android Cloud Extensibility iOS LightSwitch ✓ Office Share Office/Share PLCnext Silverlight 	Point			An empty project for a PLCnext Firmware Library that is written in C#.
Online		Click here to go online	and find templates.	
Name:	EclrFirmwareLibra	ry		
Location: c:\users\test\doc		ments\visual studio 2015\Proje	cts 👻	Browse
Solution name:	EclrFirmwareLibra	ry		Create directory for solution
				OK Cancel



- Open the "Project, Add New Item" menu.
- In the dialog that opens, select "Installed, Visual C# Items, eCLR".
- Select the "Function Block" or "Function" element from the list.
- Click on "Add".
- \Rightarrow By doing so you create a new template for a function or a function block.



Figure 7-5 Adding a "Function Block"

• When you create a function, select a return value in the following dialog.

Function Wizard	×
Return Type: BOOL	~
Kind of Retum Value Nomal By Reference	
Finish Cance	el

Figure 7-6 Adding a new "Function" element: selecting a return value

"Kind of Return Value":

"By Reference" is recommended for complex data types, and is mandatory for generic data types (ANY).

- Create your function block or function in the template.
- Observe the comments in the template.

• Create the entire project by pressing <F6>. Depending on your configuration, a *.pcwlx library is created in the release or debug directory of the project.



Figure 7-7 Example: eCLR function block template

 Also observe the information in the "Known Issues and Constraints" section of the online help (see "Additional information" on page 166).

7.3 Remote debugging of C# code with Visual Studio[®]



NOTE: Risk of damage to equipment

If safety functions are switched off, the controller must not be used for live operation.

Using the debugging function can result in an unsafe process interruption.

Ensure that there is no risk of damage to the equipment or personal injury.

Because PLCnext Technology includes an implementation of eCLR, you have the option to establish a C# remote session. The following sections describe the basic steps needed for setting up a remote debug session and establishing a direct connection to a running application by means of Visual Studio[®].

Software used

- PuTTY
- WinSCP
- Microsoft[®] Visual Studio[®] 2015 and 2017
- Visual Studio[®] extension



Please note:

 The following description is based on the default settings. Consider all changes made by the user.

7.3.1 Disabling user authentication



NOTE: Risk of damage to equipment

If safety functions are switched off, the controller must not be used for live operation.

Currently, the C# debugging function does not feature an interface for logging on to the controller. To debug the C# code, you have to deactivate the user authentication in WBM (webbased management) of the controller.

For additional information, please refer to Section 3.9.1 on page 82.

Deactivate user authentication of your controller via WBM.



Figure 7-8 Ex

Example WBM for AXC F 2152: Deactivating user authentication

7.3.2 Opening a port and deactivating TLS (Transport Layer Security)

Currently, C# debugging via a secure communication connection is not supported. For this reason, another port has to be opened for communication with the controller. TLS (Transport Layer Security) has to be deactivated on this port.

- Open WinSCP.
- Establish a connection to the IP address of the controller and a user with root rights (see Section 2.14.7, "Root rights").

🌆 Login			– 🗆 X
New Site admin@192.168.1.10		Session Eile protocol: SFTP Host name: 192.168.1.10 User name: root Edit	Port number: 22 Password: Advanced
Tools 🔻	Manage 🔻	🔁 Login	n 🔽 Close Help

Figure 7-9 Establishing a connection

- Open the /etc/plcnext/device/System/RscGateway/ folder.
- Open the "RscGateway.settings" file.

🌆 C:\ - root@192.168.1.10 - WinSCP				_		×
Local Mark Files Commands Session Options Remote Help						
🖶 🔀 📚 Synchronize 🗾 🧬 👔 🕼 🎒 Queue 🔹 🛛 Transfer Settings Default	• <i>🔁</i> •					
🖵 admin@192.168.1.10 📮 root@192.168.1.10 🚅 New Session						
📲 C: System 🔹 🚰 🔽 🚺 🗢 🔹 🔶 😨	📙 RscGateway 🔹 🚰 🛐 🦛 📼	> -	🔁 🗖 🏠 🎜 Fi	nd Files	2	
🛿 🛃 Upload 🔹 📝 Edit 🤟 🔀 🔂 Properties Mew 🗸 📳 🖃 👿	📲 🗃 Download 👻 📝 Edit 👻 🚮 🗌	Pro	perties 🎽 New 🛛 🗄	- 4		
C:\	/etc/plcnext/device/System/RscGateway/					
Name Size Type Changed	Name	Size	Changed	Righ	ts	Owner
	<u>t.</u>		23.11.2017 16:48:48	rwxr	-xr-x	admin
	RscGateway.settings	4 KB	09.01.2018 07:58:13	rw-r-	r	admin
I						

Figure 7-10 "RscGateway" directory with "RscGateway.settings" file

Scroll to the line with the "TcpGatewaySettings".

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

Insert the line <TcpGatewaySettings gatewayId="0" tcpPort="41101" sessionTimeout="300000" encrypted="false" /> as shown in the figure below:

/etc/plcnext/device/System/RscGate	way/RscGateway.settings - root@192.168.1.10 - Editor - WinSCP - 🛛 🗙
6 6 2 h 4 h × a 👂	C 🛱 🏡 📾 🗧 Encoding 🗸 🗆 Color 🛛 🛞 🎯
<tcpgatewaysettings g<="" th=""><th>The session timeout determines the time in millisecods after a remoting connect when no communication occurs. If this value is set to <c>0</c>, it means infini the remoting session is never discarded. The default value is <c>300000</c> (5m teway used by PCWE> atewayId="1" tcpPort="41100" sessionTimeout="300000" encrypted="true" /> atewayId="0" tcpPort="41101" sessionTimeout="300000" encrypted="false" /></th></tcpgatewaysettings>	The session timeout determines the time in millisecods after a remoting connect when no communication occurs. If this value is set to <c>0</c> , it means infini the remoting session is never discarded. The default value is <c>300000</c> (5m teway used by PCWE> atewayId="1" tcpPort="41100" sessionTimeout="300000" encrypted="true" /> atewayId="0" tcpPort="41101" sessionTimeout="300000" encrypted="false" />
<	>
Line: 1/59 Column: 1	Character: 60 (0x3C) Encoding: 1252 (ANSI - La
	7.3.3 Debug mode
Creating/opening a proj- ect	 Create a new project in Visual Studio[®]. Set it up. Follow the operating instructions in Section "Creating a firmware library" on page 16 Or Open an existing project
Importing a library in PLCnext Engineer	 Import the library in PLCnext Engineer (see Section "Importing libraries into PLCnext Engineer" on page 184).
Activating debug mode	 To activate debug mode, proceed as follows: Connect PLCnext Engineer to the controller. Additional information on PLCnext Engineer is available in the online help and in the quick start guide. The quick start guide can be downloaded at <u>phoenixcontact.net/products</u>. In the "PLANT" area, right-click on the controller.



In the context menu, select "Debug On/Off".

Figure 7-12 Activating debug mode in PLCnext Engineer

Attaching Visual Studio[®] to the process

- In Visual Studio[®] open the "Debug, Attach to Process..." menu.
- From the "Transport" drop-down list, select the "eCLR Device" entry.
- Click on the "Find..." button.
- In the "Attach to eCLR" dialog that opens, enter the IP address of the controller (e.g., 192.168.1.10:41101) and port number 41101.
- Select the image under the following path: "c:\users\Public\Documents\PLCnext Engineer\Version\Binaries\PROJECT1@binary\ eCLR\".

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

A shortcut to this path is available in the "Select Image File" dialog. It can be found under "Microsoft Visual Studio 2015", "Binaries".

nsport:	eCLR De	vice			
alifier:	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Y Find			
ansport Information he 'eCLR Device' f		les debugging a program on ar	n eCLR device.		
ach to:	eCLR D	ebug Engine code			
ailable Processes Process	ID	Title	Туре	User Name	Session
192.168.1.10:4110	1 3	eCLR	Managed		0
	Attach to eCl IP Address: 192.168.1.1 Image: c:\users\Pul	0:41101	\Binaries\PROJECT1@binary\eCLR\eCLR OK	X img Cancel	
] Show processes	from all users				Refresh

Figure 7-13 Attaching Visual Studio[®] to the process

- Select the image currently running on the controller.
- Confirm your selection with "OK".
- Click on the "Attach" button.
- Then add breakpoints in Visual Studio.

Execution of the code is stopped at the breakpoint. You can now evaluate the current variable values.

File	Edit	View Project Build Debug Team Tools Test Analyze Window Help	
C	- 0	🚯 - 🏩 😫 🤔 🤊 - 🔇 - 🛛 Debug - 🖓 Any CPU - 🕨 Continue - 🍺 🛫 II	
Pr	rocess:	[2] 192.168.1.10:41101 • II Lifecycle Events • Thread: [0]	-
Dem	noFunct	onBlock.cs 🖩 🤌 🗙	
C# P	PLCnext	SharpLibraryDemo 🔹 🔩 PLCnextCSharpLibraryDemo.DemoFuncti 👻 🕼Process()	
	10	[FunctionBlock]	
		0 references	
	11	public class DemoFunctionBlock	
	12	{	
	13	[Input]	
	14	public short IN1;	
	15	[Input]	
	16	public short IN2;	
	17	[Output]	
	18	public short OUT;	
	19		
	20	[Initialization]	
		0 references	
	21	<pre>public voidInit()</pre>	
	22	1	
	23	11	
	24	<pre>// TODO: Initialize the variables of the function block her</pre>	'e
	25		
	26	}	
	27		
	28	[Execution] 0 references	
	29	public void Process()	
	30	{	
0	31	OUT = (short)(IN1 + IN2);	
	32	}	
	33		
	34		

Figure 7-14 Setting breakpoints in Visual Studio

• Use the functions in Visual Studio to jump to the next breakpoint or continue processing of the code.



Figure 7-15 Continuing code processing or jumping to the next breakpoint

If you want to make changes to the code within the framework of debugging, you have to disconnect the process connection ("Detach"):

٠

File Edit View	Project Build De	bug Team Tools Test Analy	ze Window Help	
• • • 8 - Process: [2] 192."	🖆 🔛 🔐 🤊 - 168.1.10:41101	Windows Graphics		১ । २ । २ : २ : । २ २ ऱ ≈ :
DemoFunctionBlock.cs # + ×		Continue	F5	- Solution
		Break All	Ctrl+Alt+Break	
10	[FunctionBlock	Stop Debugging	Shift+F5	+ 00
	0 references	Detach All		Search S
11 🖻	public class D	Terminate All		So So
12	{			4 📼
13	[Input]		Ctrl+Shift+F5	Þ
14	public shc 📷	Performance Profiler	Alt+F2	Þ
15	[Input]	Attach to Process	Ctrl+Alt+P	Þ
16	public shc * [Output]	Other Debug Targets		Þ
18	public shc	Tel CON	100	
19	public she	Profiler		
20	[Initializ 🕯	Step Into	F11	
	0 references	Step Over	F10	
21	public voi 🖡			-
22	1	Step Out	Shift+F11	

In Visual Studio, select the "Debug, Detach All" menu.

Figure 7-16 Visual Studio[®] - "Detach All"

- Make changes to the code and save them.
- Recompile the project. To do so, open the "Build, Rebuild Project name" menu.
- Then, switch to PLCnext Engineer.
- PLCnext Engineer recognizes the change. Save the change.

i

If the inputs/outputs have been changed, errors might occur in PLCnext Engineer. If necessary, correct them in PLCnext Engineer.

- Transfer the project to the controller.
- Then, reconnect Visual Studio to the process (see Section "Attaching Visual Studio® to the process" on page 175).

For information on the debug functions in PLCnext Engineer and in Microsoft Visual Studio[®], please refer to the associated documentation.

7.4 Supported functions of the PLCnext Technology C# programming system

7.4.1 C# language functions

Types

All the integrated types are supported with the exception of decimal.

Type system

- Namespaces, structs, classes, interfaces, enumerations, nested types
- Indexers, properties, operations
- Events, delegates, MultiCastDelegates
- Arrays
- Constructors, static constructors, destructors (finalizers)
- Boxing, unboxing, static casts

Nullable

Polymorphy

- Virtual mechanism (virtual, overwrite, abstract)
- Dynamic casts (as)

Modifiers and keywords

- public, internal, protected, private
- readonly, const, sealed, unsafe
- params, ref, out
- base, this
- explicit, implicit, operator

Operators

- new, sizeof, typeof, as, is
- All unary operators
- All binary operators
- Prefix, postfix and conditional operator
- Cast and index operator

Control structures and statements

- if, else
- switch, case, default (also on strings)
- for, do, while, foreach, break, continue
- goto, return
- using, fixed
- lock

Exceptions

- throw
- try, catch, finally

For additional information, please refer to Section "Known issues and constraints" on page 181.

7.4.2 Base class libraries

Below you will find a list of the most important classes that have been implemented in the eCLR base class library, separated by namespaces. A complete list of the implemented classes with additional information is available in Section "eCLR Base Class Libraries Reference" of the "eCLR-Programming-Reference.chm" online help (see "Additional information" on page 166).

System

All integrated types, as well as the following:

- Char, Boolean, Int32, Single, etc., with the exception of decimal
- All common exception types

- Common interfaces such as:
- IDisposable, IComparable, ICloneable, IFormatProvider, IFormattable
- String, array, object, valuetype
- Version, DateTime, TimeSpan, TimeZone
- BitConverter, Convert
- GC
- Console
- Uri, UriBuilder

System.Collections

- IEnumerator, IEnumerable, ICollection, IList, IDictionary, IComparer
- ArrayList, Hashtable, Queue
- Comparer, DictionaryEntry

System.Collections.Generic

- IEnumerator<T>, IEnumerable<T>, ICollection<T>, ICollection<T>, IList<T>, IDictionary<TKey, TValue>, IComparer<T>
- Dictionary<TKey,TValue>, List<T>, Queue<T>
- Comparer<T>, KeyValuePair<TKey,TValue>

System.Globalization

- Calendar, CalendarWeekRule
- CultureInfo Supported cultures: de-DE, en-US, en-GB, Invariant
 Types that support the localized formatting/parsing: all number types, DateTime, Time-Span
- DateTimeFormatInfo, NumberFormatInfo, NumberStyles, DateTimeStyles

System.IO

- Path, File
- Stream, FileStream, MemoryStream
- BinaryReader, BinaryWriter
- TextReader, TextWriter, StreamReader, StreamWriter, StringReader, StringWriter

System.Security.Cryptography

- CryptoConfig
- HashAlgorithm, MD5, MD5CryptoServiceProvider

System.Text

- StringBuilder
- Encoding, ASCIIEncoding, UTF8Encoding, UnicodeEncoding (big endian and little endian)

System.Threading

- Thread, ThreadPool, ThreadStart, ThreadState
- Monitor (lock)
- WaitHandle, EventWaitHandle, AutoResetEvent, ManualResetEvent, WaitCallback
- Timer, TimerCallback

System.Net

- IPAdress, IPEndpoint, Endpoint, SocketAddress
- WebClient, HttpWebRequest, HttpWebResponse

System.Net.Sockets

- NetworkStream
- AddressFamily, ProtocolType
- Socket, SocketType

7.4.3 eCLR runtime functions

Garbage collection

Memory management is performed by the eCLR. The garbage collector should explicitly only be called at a specific point in time (application of GC.Collect).

Implicit finalization

The finalizer of each applicable .NET class (implementing \sim T()) is called when teh garbage collector releases the instance. The garbage collector collect function is called automatically. The time of the implicit call cannot be predicted.

Implicit initialization

All the integrated types and value types (struct) are implicitly initialized with their default values. Reference type instances are implicitly initialized with the value "zero".

Debug support

- Defining breakpoints
- Evaluation of instance values and local variables, as well as arguments from the current method
- Providing call stack information

Known issues and constraints

For detailed information, please refer to Section "Known Issues and Constraints" of the Visual Studio[®] extension online help (see "Additional information" on page 166).

7.5 Supported data types

The following table illustrates how the IEC 61131-3 data types are linked to the .Net Framework and C#. Variables of data types that are marked with a "+" in the "Attribute data type" column must have the optional "DataType" attribute for unique assignment.

IEC 61131-3	.Net Framework	C#	Attribute data type
BOOL	System.Boolean	bool	-
SINT	System.SByte	sbyte	-
INT	System.Int16	short	-
DINT	System.Int32	int	-
LINT	System.Int64	long	-
USINT	System.Byte	byte	-
UINT	System.UInt16	ushort	-
UDINT	System.UInt32	uint	-
ULINT	System.UInt64	ulong	-
REAL	System.Single	float	-
LREAL	System.Double	double	-
TIME	System.UInt32	uint	+
LTIME	System.Int64	long	+
LDATE	System.Int64	long	+
LTOD	System.Int64	long	+
LDT	System.Int64	long	+
BYTE	System.Byte	byte	+
WORD	System.UInt16	ushort	+
DWORD	System.UInt32	uint	+
LWORD	System.UInt64	ulong	+
STRING	System.lec61131Lib. lecStringEx		-
ANY	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_MAGNITUDE	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_NUM	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_INT	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_SIGNED	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_UNSIGNED	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_REAL	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_BIT	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+
ANY_ELEMEN- TARY	System.lec61131Lib.Any		+

 Table 7-1
 Supported IEC 61131-3, .Net Framework, and C# data types

8 Matlab[®] Simulink[®]

 $\mathsf{Matlab}^{\texttt{®}}$ $\mathsf{Simulink}^{\texttt{®}}$ is a software program for the model-based development of dynamic systems.

The "PC Worx Target for Simulink" software add-on (Order No. 2400041) enables the conversion of Simulink[®] models into device-specific code for use with Remote Field und Axioline controllers. The models converted from Simulink[®] can be integrated into the PC Worx and PLCnext Engineer development environments.



The model-based design and versatile simulation possibilities of Simulink[®] can therefore also be used for automation projects within PLCnext Technology. A structured model implementation can be ensured, thanks to the automatic creation of executable code. The import and configuration options in PLCnext Engineer also enable Simulink[®] models to be operated together with programs that have been created in IEC 61131-3 languages or C++. The combination with other high-level-language programs in the same task and execution in the real-time context is therefore also possible for Simulink[®] models. Furthermore, you can also implement monitoring of model parameters, and optimization of the models during execution via "external mode".

For additional information on the add-on and its use, please refer to:

- PC Worx Target for Simulink product page (Order No. 2400041): phoenixcontact.com/webcode/#1955
- Tutorial videos in the PLCnext Community: plcnext-community.net/index.php?option=com_content&view=category&layout=blog&id=71<emid=339&lang=en

9 Importing libraries into PLCnext Engineer



You will find additional information on PLCnext Engineer in the online help and the quick start guide (PLCNEXT ENGINEER, Order No. 1046008).

Once you have generated a *.pcwlx library from a C++ or C# library, import this library into the PLCnext Engineer software. In PLCnext Engineer, imported libraries are treated as an ICE 61131-3 program or as a function or function block, and are processed in tasks.

To import a library into PLCnext Engineer, proceed as follows:

- Open your PLCnext Engineer project or create a new AXC F 2152 template.
- In the "COMPONENTS" area, click on "References".
- Right-click on "Libraries".

Adding a library

• Right-click to open the "Add Library" context menu.

COMPONEI	NTS
KA XK	Search 🧃
> 📄 Programming (268)	
PLCnext Components & Prog	grams
> Setwork (319)	
> 🔏 HMI (31)	
🗸 🔀 Libraries (1)	
Libraries (1)	
📄 PLCnext Cont 🖳 Add	User Library
🖳 Add	Library

Figure 9-1 "Add library" context menu

- In the dialog that opens, select the desired *.pcwlx library.
- Click on "Open".

The component and program or the function or function block are now available in the "COMPONENTS" area under "Libraries".

COMPONEN	NTS	
KA MK KA AK	Search	₫.,
> 📄 Programming (268)		
🕨 🚞 PLCnext Components & Prog	grams	
Network (319)		
> (HMI (31)		
🛩 🛃 Libraries (1)		
Libraries (1)		

Figure 9-2 PLCnext Engineer - Libraries

Adding functions/functionThe library is now a part of the PLCnext Engineer project. The POUs (Program OrganizationblocksUnits) contained therein can be used in the project, for example in the FBD (Function Block
Diagram).

- Open the "Main" code worksheet via the "COMPONENTS" area.
- Open the "Code" program editor.
- Add the new C# function block by dragging it from the "COMPONENTS" area under "Libraries" to your code worksheet.

PC Worx Engineer - PROJECT1.pcwex		- 🗆 X
File Edit View Project Extras	Window Help	Denenix
		COMPONENTS
PLANT		Search a
✓ 📙 axc2152-1 : AXC F 2152 (6) 👅	Variables Code ·	> Data Types
✓ (;) PLCnext (2)	Code + × -	
✓ 11. ESM1 (1)	ⓑ ₩01 ≣ 圓 ↔ >> >: ト -1 -1F @ (> 42) ♦ .	✓
Cyclic100 (1)	▲ XI員②	Con Local (1)
======================================	DemoFunctionBlock_1	🔲 Main
() HMI Webserver (0) UA OPC UA	DemoFunctionBlock	
III Profinet (0)	Var1 In1 Out Var3	
Axioline F (0)	Var2 - In2	
	<	
	ERROR LIST + 7 ×	 Functions & Function Blocks (236) Berrisse (200)
	Y Search of J	 Devices (290) (31)
	Code Description	 References (1)
		 Libraries (1) EclrFirmwareLibraryDemo (1)
		 Euler Initial Club al young (1) Functions & Function Blocks (1)
		DemoFunctionBlock
	<>	1
	0 errors, 0 warnings 🔍 🐼 100%	



Assigning inputs/outputs Additional information is available in the Readme.txt file (see "Additional information" on page 166).

Instantiating a program

To instantiate a program contained in a library, proceed as follows:

• In the "PLANT" area, select the "PLCnext" node.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

• Open the "Tasks and Events" editor.

PLANT	(=) PLCnext ×	
Project (1)	Tasks and Events	🗉 Data List
✓ (→) PLCnext (2)		
▶ 扭, ESM1 (1) 坩, FSM2 (0)	4Ψ.	

Figure 9-4 Opening the "Tasks and Events" editor

- In the editor, create a new task or open an existing task.
- Drag and drop the program from the "COMPONENTS" area to the "Name" column below the desired tasks. This way you generate a program instance.

Name	Task Type	Event Name	Program Type	I
✓ ^{III} , ESM1				
Cyclic100	Cyclic Task			1
MainInstance			Main	
CPP_Counter_P1			CPP_Counter_P	
Enter program instance name here			Select program type here	
Enter task name here				
✓ ^{III} , ESM2				
Enter task name here				
Figure 9-5	Example: C	CPP_Counter_P1 program inst	ance in the "Task and Event" e	-it

9-5 Example: CPP_Counter_P1 program instance in the "Task and Event" editor

The programs in the "COMPONENTS" area are displayed at different locations, depending on the programming language they were written in.

- Programs that were created in IEC 61131 can be found under "Programming". A distinction is made between:
 - "Local, Programs": Programs from the same project are located here.
 - "Library name": Programs from an IEC 61131 library are located here.
- Programs that were created in C++ or Matlab[®] Simulink[®] are located under "PLCnext Components & Programs", "Library name", "Component name".
- Functions and function blocks created with C# are located under "PLCnextBase".





Assigning IN/OUT ports • In the "PLANT" area, select the "PLCnext" node.

Open the "Data List" editor.

In the "Data List" editor, all IN and OUT ports saved to the GDS of the controller are displayed. The IN and OUT ports of the newly instantiated program are displayed. To use the IN/OUT ports of the imported library, you must assign the IN and OUT ports of the imported libraries to the IN and OUT ports of other program instances so that consistent data exchange can take place.

Assigning an IN port to an OUT port, click on "Select IN Port here" in the "IN Port" col-OUT port umn.

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

The role picker opens. Only the IN ports that you can actually assign to the respective OUT port are displayed in the role picker.

- Select the IN port that you want to assign to the relevant OUT port in the role picker.
- The IN port is assigned to the OUT port.
- Proceed as described for other IN ports.

Assigning several IN ports to an OUT port

- Assign an IN port to an OUT port as described in the previous section.
- To assign further IN ports to an OUT port, you have to duplicate the OUT port.
- Right-click on the OUT port and select the "Duplicate Output Port" option in the context menu.



Figure 9-7 Duplicating an output port

- To assign an IN port to the duplicated OUT port, proceed as described in the previous section.
- Assigning an OUT port to an IN port, click on "Select OUT Port here" in the "OUT Port" column.

The role picker opens. Only the OUT ports that you can actually assign to the respective IN port are displayed in the role picker.

- Select the OUT port that you want to assign to the relevant IN port in the role picker.
- The OUT port is assigned to the IN port.
- Proceed as described for other OUT ports.

🔹 Har 🗖 🚍 🖕		Data	List
tries			
OUT Port	К Туре	IN Port	Туре
Arp.Plc.Eclr / SquareWave : OP_	Sigi BOOL	CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1 / C	bit
Arp.Plc.Eclr / SquareWave : OP_	Sigi BOOL	Arp.Plc.Eclr / PCWE_Counter : IP_C	BOOL
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dio-1 /	dio Bitstring8	CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1 / C	uint8
CPP_Counter.CPP_Counter_C-1	/ C uint8	axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dio-1 / dio	Bitstring
Arp.Plc.Eclr / PCWE_Counter : O	P_(USINT	axc2152-1 / dio-1 / ~DO8	Bitstring
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1	/ da Bitstring8	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1	/ da BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1	/ da BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1	/ da BOOL	Select IN Port here	
axc2152-1 / axl-f-bk-pn-1 / dap-1	/ da BOOL	Select IN Port here	
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT00	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT01	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT02	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT03	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT04	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT05	BOOL
Select OUT Port here		axc2152-1 / dio-1 / OUT06	BOOL

• Observe the instructions in Section 2.8.5 "Supported data types".

Figure 9-8 "Data List" editor

Once you have assigned all IN and OUT ports to be used, transfer the PLCnext Engineer project to the controller. Additional information on PLCnext Engineer is available in the online help, the quick start guide (PLCNEXT ENGINEER, Order No. 1046008) and the user manual for the AXC F 2152 controller (Order no. 2404267).

A Appendix

A 1 Available data types

Table A-1 Available data types

Bits	C#	IEC 61131	FDCML	C++	OPC UA
1	BOOL	BOOL	Bit/BOOL	Boolean	Boolean
16	UInt16	WORD	Bitstring16	uint16	UInt16
32	UInt32	DWORD	Bitstring32	uint32	UInt32
64	UInt64	LWORD	Bitstring64	uint64	UInt64
8	Byte	BYTE	Bitstring8	uint8	Byte
8	Byte	BYTE	BYTE	uint8	Byte
32	Int32	DINT	DINT	int32	Int32
32	UInt32	DWORD	DWORD	uint32	UInt32
32	Single	REAL	Float32	float32	Float
64	Double	LREAL	Float64	float64	Double
16	Int16	INT	INT	int16	Int16
64	Int64	LDATE	LDATE	int64	*
64	Int64	LDATE_AND TIME	LDATE_AND TIME	int64	*
64	Int64	LDT	LDT	int64	*
64	Int64	LINT	LINT	int64	Int64
64	Double	LREAL	LREAL	float64	Double
64	Int64	LTIME	LTIME	int64	*
64	Int64	LTIME_OF_DAY	LTIME_OF_DAY	int64	*
64	Int64	LTOD	LTOD	int64	*
64	UInt64	LWORD	LWORD	uint64	UInt64
8	Byte	BYTE	Octetstring1	uint8	Byte
16	UInt16	WORD	Octetstring2	uint16	UInt16
32	UInt32	DWORD	Octetstring4	uint32	UInt32
64	UInt64	LWORD	Octetstring8	uint64	UInt64
32	Single	REAL	REAL	float32	Float
16	Int16	INT	Signed16	int16	Int16
32	Int32	DINT	Signed32	int32	Int32
64	Int64	LINT	Signed64	int64	Int64
8	SByte	SINT	Signed8	int8	SByte
8	SByte	SINT	SINT	int8	SByte
n*8	String	STRING	StringASCII	StaticString	*
32	Int32	TIME	TIME	int32	*

PLCNEXT TECHNOLOGY

Table A-1Available data types

Bits	C#	IEC 61131	FDCML	C++	OPC UA
32	UInt32	UDINT	UDINT	uint32	UInt32
16	UInt16	UINT	UINT	uint16	UInt16
64	UInt64	ULINT	ULINT	uint64	UInt64
16	UInt16	UINT	Unsigned16	uint16	UInt16
32	UInt32	UDINT	Unsigned32	uint32	UInt32
64	UInt64	ULINT	Unsigned64	uint64	UInt64
8	Byte	USINT	Unsigned8	uint8	Byte
8	Byte	USINT	USINT	uint8	Byte
16	UInt16	WORD	WORD	uint16	UInt16

* Not yet implemented

A 2 PLCnext Technology naming conventions

When designating PLCnext Technology components, please observe the following conventions. Correct functioning can only be ensured if you adhere to the following specifications.

A 2.1 GDS ports

A designation

- May not start with a number.
- May not be empty.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.
- May not start or end with ".".
- May contain ".".
- May start or end with "_".

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="([_a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-\[\]_.]*)([0-9a-zA-Z\[\]_]+)" />

A 2.2 Library, components and program

A designation

- May not start with a number.
- May not contain ".".
- May not be empty.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.
- Has to start with a capital letter

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="([a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-]*)([0-9a-zA-Z]+)" />

A 2.3 Program instances

A designation

- May not start with a number.
- May not be empty.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="([a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-]*)([0-9a-zA-Z]+)" />

A 2.4 Component instances

A designation

- May not start with a number.
- May not be empty.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="([a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-]*)([0-9a-zA-Z]+)" />

A 2.5 Processes

A designation

- Has to be unique.
- May not contain ".".
- May not start with a number.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="|([a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-]*)([0-9a-zA-Z]+)" />

A 2.6 Tasks

A designation

- May not start with a number.
- May not be empty.
- Must consist of at least two characters.
- May not exceed 128 characters.
- May not contain spaces or tabulators.

XML restriction <xs:pattern value="([a-zA-Z]+)([0-9a-zA-Z\-]*)([0-9a-zA-Z]+)" />

A 2.7 Namespaces

A designation

- May not contain spaces.
- May not end with "++".
- Should not contain "_".

A 3 Explanation of terms

ACF	\rightarrow Application Control Framework
Application Control Framework	The ACF is a central part of the PLCnext Technology system architecture. It enables component-based platform development as well as expandability and configurability of the entire system. \rightarrow Section 5.5 "ACF (Application Component Framework)"
ΑΡΙ	\rightarrow Application Programming Interface
Application Programming Interface	An API is an interface that enables the connection of programs to a software system.
ARP	\rightarrow Automation Runtime Platform
Automation Runtime Plat- form	In the PLCnext Technology firmware, ARP is used as the root name for namespaces.
CLI	\rightarrow Command Line Interface
	See PLCnCLI
Component	\rightarrow Component
Common classes	Common classes are useful classes for operating system functions, e.g., threads, sockets, chrono, etc. The PLCnext Technology common classes are provided via the Phoenix Contact SDK.
Connector	A connector connects an IN port to an OUT port. An OUT port can be connected to several IN ports. One connector is used for each connection. A connector can execute additional tasks such as byte swapping, type casts or bit masking.
Core component	\rightarrow Core components
CRL	\rightarrow Certificate Revocation List
Data sink	A data sink is the location where data is received and stored.
Debugging	Localization and diagnostics of errors in programs. The debug mode provides different functions that support the user during the function test of the program as well as during error localization and diagnostics (e.g., setting of breakpoints).
Real-time user program	PLC program that can be programmed in IEC 61131-3, C++, or $Matlab^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$ Simulink $^{\ensuremath{\mathbb{R}}}$.
eCLR	ProConOS embedded CLR is the open IEC 61131 control runtime system for different automation tasks.
ESM	\rightarrow Execution and Synchronization Manager
ESM task	→ Task

Execution and Synchroni- zation Manager	The Execution and Synchronization Manager is used for real-time task handling. It performs task handling, monitoring and chronological sequencing of programs from different programming languages and enables program execution in a real-time context. \rightarrow Section 2.7 "ESM (Execution and Synchronization Manager)" on page 21		
External user components	An external user component is a component that is created by the user. It is not processed within the PLCnext framework but directly under Linux.		
GDS	\rightarrow Global Data Space		
GDS buffer storage units	A GDS buffer storage unit is a memory area used for buffering and transferring data be- tween ESM tasks. It serves as a data exchange area between IN and OUT ports.		
Global Data Space	The GDS is the central point for storing all the data that is exchanged between the pro- grams. Data exchange is implemented via IN and OUT ports that the user can link. The GDS enables communication relationships and data exchange between tasks and programs that were created in different programming languages. The GDS also ensures that each task al- ways uses consistent values. \rightarrow Section 2.8 "GDS (Global Data Space)" on page 27		
Hot restart	All variable values are retained when the controller is started.		
IdentityStore	The IdentityStore is an identity memory for PLCnext Technology devices. It contains au- thentication tools, e.g., key pairs, certificates, etc.		
IN port	\rightarrow Port		
Internal user component	Internal user components are components created by the user. These components do not run in the real-time context of the PLCnext Technology platform. They extend the range of functions of the PLCnext Technology platform.		
Cold restart	When the controller is started, all variables are started with their initialization values. Existing data is reset.		
Core components	 The core components form the core function of the PLCnext Technology. They are part of the firmware and contain the following components: Service components (e.g., ESM, system manager, PLC manager, eCLR, etc.) System components (e.g., OPC UA server, WBM, etc.) I/O components (e.g., fieldbus manager) Middleware (e.g., GDS, RSC, common classes, etc.) 		
Component	A component is a collection of functions. It may contain one or more programs as well as IN and OUT ports.		
Middleware	\rightarrow Core components		
Notification	Notifications are messages that can be sent and received by components to point out spe- cial events. They are identified via a name and can transport user data.		
Notification manager	The notification manager enables components to send and receive notifications. It accepts messages from a sender and forwards them to the registered recipient.		
User data	User data (payload) is information data in data packets. It does not contain control or proto- col information.		

NTP	Network Time Protocol
	NTP is a protocol for time synchronization in IT systems.
OPC UA server	Open Platform Communications Unified Architecture
	OPC UA is a standardized protocol for industrial machine-to-machine communication. Ex- change of process data, variable values, read and write access to file systems, etc. between OPC UA server and clients is implemented via the protocol.
OUT port	\rightarrow Port
Payload	\rightarrow User data
PC Worx Engineer	Engineering software platform for Phoenix Contact automation controllers. PC Worx Engi- neer complies with IEC 61131-3 and its functions can be expanded using add-ins. The soft- ware was called PC Worx Engineer up to version 7.2.3. As of version 2019.0 LTS, the soft- ware is called PLCnext Engineer.
PLC manager	The PLC manager is part of the PLCnext Technology firmware. It manages the real-time programs of the PLC and starts and stops them.
PLCnCLI	\rightarrow PLCnext Command Line Interface The PLCnCLI is a command-line interface. It can be used for generating metafiles, C++ header files, for adding IN and OUT ports and generating PLCnext Engineer libraries, for example.
PLCnext Community	Information platform for PLCnext Technology users with a connected forum for direct con- tact with PLCnext Technology experts. See <u>plcnext-community.net</u> .
PLCnext Engineer	Engineering software platform for Phoenix Contact automation controllers. PLCnext Engineer is IEC 61131-3-compliant and its functions can be extended using add- ins.
PLCnext Store	The PLCnext Store is a trade platform for the sale of apps for PLCnext controllers (PLCnext Engineer libraries, programs, solution apps, etc.).
PLCnext Technology	PLCnext Technology is the basis of the new, open control platform from Phoenix Contact. This new technology enables users to work with various well-established software tools at the same time, including Visual Studio [®] , Eclipse [®] , Matlab [®] Simulink [®] , and PLCnext Engineer. In addition, it facilitates writing of program code in IEC 61131-3 as well as in C++ or C#. Additional functions from third-party manufacturers or the open-source community can be added to the Phoenix Contact automation system, merging into one complete system.
PLM	ightarrow Program Library Manager
POU	\rightarrow Program Organization Unit (POU) Collective term for the terms "function", "function block", and "program" defined in IEC 61131-3. They are used for modularizing and structuring the PLC program.
Program Library Manager	The PLM is part of the PLC manager. The PLM manages components providing user pro- grams.

PROFICLOUD	PROFICLOUD is the cloud solution from Phoenix Contact. Locally or globally distributed network devices and even the functions of an industrial PROFINET network can simply and securely be moved to the cloud with PROFICLOUD. Performance data can be accessed rapidly from sites anywhere in the world.
Port	Data between programs is exchanged via the IN and OUT ports. To establish a communi- cation relationship between the programs, IN and OUT ports have to be connected via con- nectors.
Regular expressions	Regex: Character string for describing quantities of character strings using syntactic rules.
Resource-global variables	According to IEC 61131-3, resource-global variables can be used in all Program Organiza- tion Units (POU) of the current resource.
Remote service call	Remote service calls are services for the communication between processes and between devices. They provide the API to enable access to all core components of the PLCnext Technology firmware.
RSC	\rightarrow Remote service call
SDK	\rightarrow Software Development Kit
Service components	\rightarrow Core components
Service manager	The service manager is used to request registered RSC services (components of the SDK) and integrate them into the process.
SFTP	Secure File Transfer Protocol
Shared object	A shared object file (*.so) corresponds to a dynamic library (also called shared libraries). It is downloaded from the firmware to the memory during runtime. Then, the functions included can be called. In PLCnext Technology, a shared object file contains the code for the components and programs to be executed and which where created in C++ or Matlab [®] Simulink [®] .
Software Development Kit	The Phoenix Contact SDK contains important toolchains and libraries required for creating programs.
PLC	Programmable logic controller
SSH	Secure shell
System components	\rightarrow Core components
System manager	The system manager loads and configures the system components and monitors the sta- bility of the system.
Task	 A task is a configuration unit for the execution of program instances (e.g., cyclic execution at fixed intervals). The following task types are available: Cyclic task Idle task System event task

Task output data	At the end of its execution, a task makes its calculated output data available to other tasks via a buffer storage unit. The task output data is the sum of all OUT port variables that are connected to buffer storage units of I/O systems or to IN ports of program instances in other tasks.
Task input data	When being started, a task actively consumes data from the task output buffer storage units of other tasks, or from the buffer storage units of I/O systems. All user programs within a task therefore use the same input data during the entire task runtime. The consistent input data image is only updated with the next start of the task.
TSD	Time-Series Data
User manager	The user manager manages the different users. Each user has a name and a password. One or several user roles are assigned to each user.
User program	The user creates the user programs in IEC 61131-3, C++, or with Matlab [®] Simulink [®] . They are processed in real-time context via the ESM. Through integration into the ESM, a user program becomes real-time-capable. Connection to the data exchange area of the GDS is implemented via IN and OUT ports.
VPN	Virtual Private Network
Warm restart	All variable values marked with "Retain" in PLCnext Engineer are retained when the control- ler is started.
WBM	\rightarrow Web-based management
Web-based management	You can call web-based management via the web browser of your PC. WBM is used to re- ceive information about the controller and to configure it (e.g., managing access data and user roles).

A 4 **PROFINET** diagnostic code in WBM

The "PROFINET" page in the WBM "Diagnostics" area of your controller is used to view information about the controller and the connected PROFINET devices, as well as information about their Axioline F local bus devices. The displayed diagnostic code consists of several bits that are evaluated individually. The diagnostic state (OK, warning, error) as well as the corresponding diagnostic text are based on an evaluation of the diagnostic bits. The following section is an excerpt from the "AutomationRuntimePlatform/Source/Arp/lo/Profinet-Stack/Controller/Services/DiagnosticInfo.hpp" firmware file. It contains the bit description of the diagnostic code:

```
/// <summary>
```

/// Special status of this AR, bitwise coded. /// - Bit 0: set if not connected /// - Bit 1: set if data invalid /// - Bit 2: set if diagnosis is available /// - Bit 3: set if module difference is available in case of configuration difference /// - Bit 4: set if AR is deactivated /// - Bit 5: set if neighborhood information is not available /// - Bit 6: neighborhood information not unique /// - Bit 7 - Identify.cnf on alias received, but name of the device is already configured in another AR /// - Bit 8: Maintenance Required Information is available /// - Bit 9: Maintenance Demanded Information is available /// - Bit 10: Channel or Manufacturer Specific Diagnosis Information are available /// - Bit 11..15: reserved (shall be 0) /// </summary>

Please observe the following notes

General terms and conditions of use for technical documentation

Phoenix Contact reserves the right to alter, correct, and/or improve the technical documentation and the products described in the technical documentation at its own discretion and without giving prior notice, insofar as this is reasonable for the user. The same applies to any technical changes that serve the purpose of technical progress.

The receipt of technical documentation (in particular user documentation) does not constitute any further duty on the part of Phoenix Contact to furnish information on modifications to products and/or technical documentation. You are responsible to verify the suitability and intended use of the products in your specific application, in particular with regard to observing the applicable standards and regulations. All information made available in the technical data is supplied without any accompanying guarantee, whether expressly mentioned, implied or tacitly assumed.

In general, the provisions of the current standard Terms and Conditions of Phoenix Contact apply exclusively, in particular as concerns any warranty liability.

This manual, including all illustrations contained herein, is copyright protected. Any changes to the contents or the publication of extracts of this document is prohibited.

Phoenix Contact reserves the right to register its own intellectual property rights for the product identifications of Phoenix Contact products that are used here. Registration of such intellectual property rights by third parties is prohibited.

Other product identifications may be afforded legal protection, even where they may not be indicated as such.

How to contact us

Internet	Up-to-date information on Phoenix Contact products and our Terms and Conditions can be found on the Internet at: phoenixcontact.com
	Make sure you always use the latest documentation. It can be downloaded at: phoenixcontact.net/products
Subsidiaries	If there are any problems that cannot be solved using the documentation, please contact your Phoenix Contact subsidiary. Subsidiary contact information is available at <u>phoenixcontact.com</u> .
Published by	PHOENIX CONTACT GmbH & Co. KG Flachsmarktstraße 8 32825 Blomberg GERMANY
	PHOENIX CONTACT Development and Manufacturing, Inc. 586 Fulling Mill Road Middletown, PA 17057 USA
	Should you have any suggestions or recommendations for improvement of the contents and layout of our manuals, please send your comments to: tecdoc@phoenixcontact.com

PHOENIX CONTACT GmbH & Co. KG Flachsmarktstraße 8 32825 Blomberg, Germany Phone: +49 5235 3-00 Fax: +49 5235 3-41200 E-mail: info@phoenixcontact.com phoenixcontact.com



108664_en_03 Order No. —03